

ترجمه کتاب:



4000

Essential

English

Words

با پاسخ تمرینات

منبعی عالی

برای واژگان

جلد اول

1

Paul Nation

BeFluent.ir

4000 Essential English Words 1

۴۰۰۰ کلمه ضروری

ترجمه جلد اول

تعداد صفحات: 322

(برای خرید و دانلود نسخه کامل به وبسایت ما مراجعه کنید)

www.befluent.ir

فایل‌های صوتی تلفظ کامل کتاب را از وبسایت دانلود کنید.

این کتاب توسط گروه befluent.ir ترجمه شده است و هر گونه کپی و انتشار آن در اینترنت مجاز نبوده و پیگرد قانونی خواهد داشت.



 **BeFluent.ir**

معرفی کتاب:

تحقیقات نشان می‌دهد که در بیشتر مکالمات روزمره تنها از درصد کمی از کلمات هر زبان به صورت مکرر استفاده می‌شود. این واقعیت بیان‌گر این است که زبان‌آموزان با یادگیری این کلمات پرتکرار قادر خواهند بود که اکثر مکالمات را متوجه شده و در گام بعدی با تکرار و تسلط در استفاده از این کلمات، مهارت مکالمه خود را به صورت چشمگیری بهبود ببخشند.

سری کتاب‌های 4000 کلمه ضروری شامل 6 جلد است که در هر جلد بیشتر از 600 کلمه پرتکرار در مکالمه گنجانده شده است. در این مجموعه کلمات با توجه به میزان کاربردی بودن و تکرار آن‌ها در مکالمات و متون انتخاب شده‌اند. بنابراین با خواندن و یادگیری این کلمات مطمئن خواهید بود کلماتی که بیش از 90 درصد مکالمات انگلیسی را پوشش می‌دهند، را فرا گرفته‌اید. و از یادگیری کلماتی که ممکن است هیچوقت مورد استفاده شما قرار نگیرند، اجتناب می‌کنید. بنابراین این کلمات دارای مشخصه‌های زیر هستند:

- (1) هم در مکالمات و هم در نوشتاری بسیار کاربردی هستند.
- (2) پرتکرارترین کلمات هم در مکالمه و هم در نوشتاری هستند.
- (3) این مجموعه تقریباً 90 درصد کلمات استفاده شده در مکالمات انگلیسی، 80 درصد کلمات متون آکادمیک و 90 درصد کلمات داستان‌ها را شامل می‌شود.

نحوه آموزش کلمات:

جلد اول شامل 30 درس و هر درس شامل 20 کلمه می‌باشد. تمامی کلمات، تعاریف، مثال‌ها و داستان‌ها دارای تلفظ با لهجه آمریکایی می‌باشند.

ابتدا خود کلمه و معنی فارسی آن آمده است. سپس تعریف کلمه به انگلیسی و بعد از آن یک مثال برای آن کلمه به همراه ترجمه فارسی قرار داده شده است. در انتهای هر درس یک داستان که در بر دارنده تمام کلمات آن درس است به همراه ترجمه قرار دارد. با خواندن این داستان هم معنی کلمات آن درس برای شما مرور خواهد شد و هم با نحوه استفاده و کاربرد آن کلمات در موقعیت‌های واقعی آشنا خواهید شد. همینطور هر درس شامل تمرین‌هایی برای یادگیری بهتر کلمات است. پاسخ این تمرین‌ها در انتهای کتاب آورده شده است.

برای هر کلمه یک عکس اختصاص داده شده است. این عکس‌ها مرتبط با مثال آن کلمه هستند. با دیدن این عکس‌ها شما در ذهن خود یک موقعیت مربوط به آن مثال را تصور خواهید کرد که در به خاطر سپردن آن کلمه تاثیر فوق‌العاده‌ای خواهد داشت.

همینطور حالت هر کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...) مشخص شده است. دقت کنید که ممکن است یک کلمه حالت‌های دیگری نیز داشته باشد، شما سعی کنید تمرکز خود را روی حالتی از کلمه قرار دهید که مد نظر کتاب است.

توضیح اجزای آموزشی هر کلمه:



6

8 adj.

1 afraid

7 [ə'freɪd]

2 ترسیده، هراسان

3 When someone is afraid, they feel fear.

4 The woman was afraid of what she saw.

5 زن از چیزی که دید ترسید.

(1 کلمه

(2 معنی فارسی کلمه

(3 تعریف انگلیسی کلمه

(4 مثال برای آن کلمه

(5 ترجمه مثال

(6 عکسی مرتبط با کلمه و مثال

(7 فونتیک (IPA) با لهجه آمریکایی برای کلمه

(8 حالت کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...)

توضیح حالت‌های مختلف یک کلمه

v. = verb فعل

n. = noun اسم

adj. = adjective صفت

prep. = preposition حرف اضافه

pron. = pronoun ضمیر

conj. = conjunction حرف ربط

لیست دروس و کلمات

Introduction		BeFluent.ir	6
Unit	Target Words	Page	
1	afraid, agree, angry, arrive, attack, bottom, clever, cruel, finally, hide, hunt, lot, middle, moment, pleased, promise, reply, safe, trick, well	8	
2	adventure, approach, carefully, chemical, create, evil, experiment, kill, laboratory, laugh, loud, nervous, noise, project, scare, secret, shout, smell, terrible, worse	14	
3	alien, among, chart, cloud, comprehend, describe, ever, fail, friendly, grade, instead, library, planet, report, several, solve, suddenly, suppose, universe, view	20	
4	appropriate, avoid, behave, calm, concern, content, expect, frequently, habit, instruct, issue, none, patient, positive, punish, represent, shake, spread, stroll, village	26	
5	aware, badly, belong, continue, error, experience, field, hurt, judgment, likely, normal, rare, relax, request, reside, result, roll, since, visible, wild	32	
6	advantage, cause, choice, community, dead, distance, escape, face, follow, fright, ghost, individual, pet, reach, return, survive, upset, voice, weather, wise	38	
7	allow, announce, beside, challenge, claim, condition, contribute, difference, divide, expert, famous, force, harm, lay, peace, prince, protect, sense, sudden, therefore	44	
8	accept, arrange, attend, balance, contrast, encourage, familiar, grab, hang, huge, necessary, pattern, propose, purpose, release, require, single, success, tear, theory	50	
9	against, beach, damage, discover, emotion, fix, frank, identify, island, ocean, perhaps, pleasant, prevent, rock, save, step, still, taste, throw, wave	56	
10	benefit, certain, chance, effect, essential, far, focus, function, grass, guard, image, immediate, primary, proud, remain, rest, separate, site, tail, trouble	62	
11	anymore, asleep, berry, collect, compete, conversation, creature, decision, either, forest, ground, introduce, marry, prepare, sail, serious, spend, strange, truth, wake	68	
12	alone, apartment, article, artist, attitude, compare, judge, magazine, material, meal, method, neighbor, professional, profit, quality, shape, space, stair, symbol, thin	74	
13	blood, burn, cell, contain, correct, crop, demand, equal, feed, hole, increase, lord, owe, position, raise, responsible, sight, spot, structure, whole	80	
14	coach, control, description, direct, exam, example, limit, local, magical, mail, novel, outline, poet, print, scene, sheet, silly, store, suffer, technology	86	
15	across, breathe, characteristic, consume, excite, extreme, fear, fortunate, happen, length, mistake, observe, opportunity, prize, race, realize, respond, risk, wonder, yet	92	

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	academy, ancient, board, century, clue, concert, county, dictionary, exist, flat, gentleman, hidden, maybe, officer, original, pound, process, publish, theater, wealth	98
17	appreciate, available, beat, bright, celebrate, determine, disappear, else, fair, flow, forward, hill, level, lone, puddle, response, season, solution, waste, whether	104
18	argue, communicate, crowd, depend, dish, empty, exact, fresh, gather, indicate, item, offer, price, product, property, purchase, recommend, select, tool, treat	110
19	alive, bone, bother, captain, conclusion, doubt, explore, foreign, glad, however, injustice, international, lawyer, mention, policy, social, speech, staff, toward, wood	116
20	achieve, advise, already, basic, bit, consider, destroy, entertain, extra, goal, lie, meat, opinion, real, reflect, regard, serve, vegetable, war, worth	122
21	appear, base, brain, career, clerk, effort, enter, excellent, hero, hurry, inform, later, leave, locate, nurse, operation, pain, refuse, though, various	128
22	actual, amaze, charge, comfort, contact, customer, deliver, earn, gate, include, manage, mystery, occur, opposite, plate, receive, reward, set, steal, thief	134
23	advance, athlete, average, behavior, behind, course, lower, match, member, mental, passenger, personality, poem, pole, remove, safety, shoot, sound, swim, web	140
24	block, cheer, complex, critic, event, exercise, fit, friendship, guide, lack, passage, perform, pressure, probable, public, strike, support, task, term, unite	146
25	associate, environment, factory, feature, instance, involve, medicine, mix, organize, period, populate, produce, range, recognize, regular, sign, tip, tradition, trash, wide	152
26	advice, along, attention, attract, climb, drop, final, further, imply, maintain, neither, otherwise, physical, prove, react, ride, situated, society, standard, suggest	158
27	actually, bite, coast, deal, desert, earthquake, effective, examine, false, gift, hunger, imagine, journey, puzzle, quite, rather, specific, tour, trip, value	164
28	band, barely, boring, cancel, driveway, garbage, instrument, list, magic, message, notice, own, predict, professor, rush, schedule, share, stage, storm, within	170
29	advertise, assign, audience, breakfast, competition, cool, gain, importance, knowledge, major, mean, prefer, president, progress, respect, rich, skill, somehow, strength, vote	176
30	above, ahead, amount, belief, center, common, cost, demonstrate, different, evidence, honesty, idiom, independent, inside, master, memory, proper, scan, section, surface	182

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

- 1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.
- 2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.
- 3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

- 1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.
- 2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.
- 3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.
- 4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author Paul Nation

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.





adj.

afraid

[ə'freɪd]

ترسیده، هراسان

- ❖ When someone is afraid, they feel fear.
- The woman was afraid of what she saw.

➤ زن از چیزی که دید ترسید.



v.

agree

[ə'gri:]

موافق بودن

- ❖ To agree is to say "yes" or to think the same way.
- A: The food is very good in that restaurant.
B: I agree with you.

➤ غذای آن رستوران بسیار خوب است - با شما موافقم



adj.

angry

['æŋɡri]

عصبانی

- ❖ When someone is angry, they may want to speak loudly or fight.
- She didn't do her homework, so her father is angry.

➤ او تکالیفش را انجام نداد، پدرش به این دلیل عصبانی است.



v.

arrive

[ə'raɪv]

رسیدن

- ❖ To arrive is to get to or reach some place.
- The bus always arrives at the corner of my street at 4:00.

➤ اتوبوس همیشه ساعت 4 به نبش خیابان من می رسد.



v.

attack

[ə'tæk]

حمله کردن

❖ To attack is to try to fight or to hurt.

➤ The man with the sword attacked the other man first.

➤ مرد شمشیر به دست، ابتدا به مرد دیگر حمله کرد.



n.

bottom

['bɑ:təm]

زیر

❖ The bottom is the lowest part.

➤ The bottom of my shoe has a hole in it.

➤ زیر کفشم سوراخ است.



adj.

clever

['klevər]

باهوش، زرنگ

❖ When someone is clever, they can solve a hard puzzle or problem.

➤ The clever boy thought of a good idea.

➤ پسر باهوش، فکر خوبی به ذهنش رسید.



adj.

cruel

['kru:əl]

بی رحم، ظالم

❖ When someone is cruel, they do bad things to hurt others.

➤ The cruel man yelled at his sister.

➤ مرد بی رحم، بر سر خواهرش فریاد زد.



adv.

finally

['faɪnəli]

بالاخره، در نهایت، سر انجام



- ❖ If something happens finally, it happens after a longtime or at the end.
- He finally crossed the finish line after five hours of running.
- او بالاخره پس از پنج ساعت دویدن از خط پایان عبور کرد.

v.

hide

[haɪd]

پنهان شدن، مخفی شدن



- ❖ To hide is to try not to let others see you.
- The other children will hide while you count to 100.
- بچه های دیگر تا تو تا ۱۰۰ بشماری، پنهان خواهند شد.

v.

hunt

[hʌnt]

شکار کردن



- ❖ To hunt is to look for or search for an animal to kill.
- Long ago, people hunted with bows and arrows.
- در گذشته مردم با تیر و کمان شکار می کردند.

n.

lot

[lɑ:t]

تعداد زیادی، زیاد



- ❖ A lot means a large number or amount of people, animals, things, etc.
- There are a lot of apples in the basket.
- تعداد زیادی سیب در سبد وجود دارد.



n.

middle

[ˈmɪdl]

وسط

- ❖ The middle of something is the center or halfway point.
- The Canadian flag has a maple leaf in the middle of it.
- در وسط پرچم کانادا، یک برگ افرا قرار دارد.



n.

moment

[ˈmoʊnt]

لحظه

- ❖ A moment is a second or a very short time.
- I was only a few moments late for the meeting.
- من فقط چند لحظه برای جلسه دیر کردم.



adj.

pleased

[pli:zd]

راضی، خوشحال، خوشنود

- ❖ When someone is pleased, they are happy.
- She was pleased with the phone call she received.
- او از تماس تلفنی که دریافت کرد، خوشحال بود.



v.

promise

[ˈprɑ:m]

قول دادن

- ❖ To promise is to say you will do something for sure.
- He promised to return my key by tomorrow.
- او قول داد که تا فردا کلیدم را پس بدهد.



v.

reply

[ri'plai]

پاسخ دادن، جواب دادن

- ❖ To reply is to give an answer or say back to someone.
- She asked him what time his meeting was. He replied, "at three."
- از او پرسید که جلسه چه ساعتی است. او جواب داد: «ساعت سه».



adj.

safe

[seif]

در امان، ایمن، امن

- ❖ When a person is safe, they are not in danger.
- Put on your seat belt in the car to be safe.
- کمربند ایمنی‌ات را در خودرو ببند تا ایمن باشی.



n.

trick

[trik]

ترفند، حقه، کلک، شعبده بازی

- ❖ A trick is something you do to fool another person.
- His card trick really surprised us.
- ترفند کارت بازی او، واقعا ما رو شگفت‌زده کرد.



adv.

well

[wel]

به خوبی

- ❖ You use well to say that something was done in a good way.
- The couple can dance quite well.
- این زوج می‌توانند کاملا به خوبی برقصند.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- bad or hurting others
a. afraid b. clever c. cruel d. hunt
- at last or at the end
a. angry b. clever c. finally d. reply
- to try to fight or hurt
a. attack b. middle c. pleased d. trick
- to not let others see
a. agree b. hide c. safe d. well
- the lowest part
a. bottom b. lot c. moment d. promise

Part B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- angry
a. happy b. low c. mad d. scared
- moment
a. a hole with water in it b. a short time
c. at the center d. at the end
- promise
a. to say "good job" b. to say "I will"
c. to say "the end" d. to say "maybe"
- reply
a. to answer b. to get to a place
c. to look for in order to kill d. to try to fight or hurt
- safe
a. fool b. having much or many
c. not seen d. not worried about being hurt

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. A **clever** person can solve a puzzle easily.
___ b. When a plane **arrives**, it leaves the ground and goes into the sky.
2. ___ a. At noon, the sun is near the **bottom** of the sky.
___ b. If I break my brother's bike, he will be **angry**.
3. ___ a. It is easy to **hide** in a dark place.
___ b. Many kinds of fish are **afraid** of water.
4. ___ a. At night, your parents may say, "**Hide** your eyes and go to sleep."
___ b. Heavy things will go down to the **bottom** of the ocean.
5. ___ a. It is **cruel** to keep a dog in a small cage all day.
___ b. Your mother will be **angry** when you get good grades in school.
6. ___ a. Animals cannot **hunt** because they do not have hands.
___ b. It is a good idea to **arrive** early for class.
7. ___ a. People sometimes **attack** pictures to email messages.
___ b. Some people are **afraid** of spiders.
8. ___ a. A **moment** is like a second or two.
___ b. New shoes are usually not very comfortable or **clever**.
9. ___ a. Small animals do not usually **attack** big animals.
___ b. There are twelve **moments** in a year.
10. ___ a. A **cruel** person will try to help others at all times.
___ b. You can use a gun to **hunt** in the forest.

The Lion and the Rabbit

A **cruel** lion lived in the forest. Every day, he killed and ate a **lot** of animals. The other animals were **afraid** the lion would kill them all.

The animals told the lion, "Let's make a deal. If you **promise** to eat only one animal each day, then one of us will come to you every day. Then you don't have to **hunt** and kill us."

The plan sounded **well** thought-out to the lion, so he **agreed**, but he also said, "If you don't come every day, I promise to kill all of you the next day!"

Each day after that, one animal went to the lion so that the lion could eat it. Then, all the other animals were **safe**.

Finally, it was the rabbit's turn to go to the lion. The rabbit went very slowly that day, so the lion was **angry** when the rabbit finally **arrived**.

The lion angrily asked the rabbit, "Why are you late?"

"I was **hiding** from another lion in the forest. That lion said he was the king, so I was afraid."

The lion told the rabbit, "I am the only king here! Take me to that other lion, and I will kill him."

The rabbit **replied**, "I will be happy to show you where he lives."

The rabbit led the lion to an old well in the **middle** of the forest. The well was very deep with water at the **bottom**. The rabbit told the lion, "Look in there. The lion lives at the bottom."

When the lion looked in the well, he could see his own face in the water. He thought that was the other lion. Without waiting another **moment**, the lion jumped into the well to **attack** the other lion. He never came out.

All of the other animals the forest were very **pleased** with the rabbit's **clever trick**.





شیر و خرگوش

شیری ظالم و بی‌رحم در جنگل زندگی می‌کرد. او روزانه حیوانات زیادی را می‌کشت و می‌خورد. دیگر حیوانات نگران بودند که شیر همه آن‌ها را خواهد کشت.

حیوانات به شیر گفتند، " بیا یک معامله بکنیم." اگر تو قول بدی که روزانه فقط یک حیوان بخوری، اون وقت یکی از ما هر روز میاد پیشت و دیگه نیازی نیست که مارو شکار کنی و بکشی. نقشه به نظر شیر فکر خوبی آمد بنابراین قبول کرد، اما همچنین گفت "اگر هر روز نیایید، قول می‌دم روز بعدش همتون رو می‌کشم!"

بعد از آن، هر روز یک حیوان پیش شیر می‌رفت در نتیجه شیر می‌توانست او را بخورد. پس دیگر حیوانات در امان بودند. سرانجام، نوبت خرگوش بود که پیش شیر برود. خرگوش آن روز خیلی آهسته و کند رفت و وقتی که بالاخره خرگوش رسید، شیر عصبانی بود. شیر با عصبانیت از خرگوش پرسید: "چرا دیر کردی؟"

"از دست یک شیر دیگه در جنگل مخفی شدم. آن شیر گفت که سلطان (جنگل) است، بنابراین ترسیدم" شیر به خرگوش گفت "من تنها سلطان اینجا هستم، منو بیر پیش اون یکی شیر، و من می‌کشمش."

خرگوش پاسخ داد "خوشحال میشم نشونت بدم کجا زندگی میکنه" خرگوش شیر را پیش یک چاه قدیمی در وسط جنگل برد. این چاه عمق زیادی داشت و کف آن پر آب بود. خرگوش به شیر گفت "اونجا رو نگاه کن، شیر اون پایین زندگی می‌کنه"

وقتی شیر به چاه نگاه کرد، توانست چهره‌ی خودش را در آب ببیند. فکر کرد که او شیر دیگر است. بدون لحظه‌ای درنگ، به چاه پرید تا به شیر دیگر حمله کند. او هرگز بیرون نیامد. همه حیوانات دیگر جنگل از این ترفند هوشمندانه‌ی خرگوش بسیار خوشحال شدند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a clever rabbit tricked a cruel lion
 - b. How rabbits learned to hide from lions
 - c. How a rabbit pleased an angry lion
 - d. How to be safe when you hunt in the forest
2. What did all the animals say to the lion?
 - a. They said they wanted him to be their king.
 - b. They said that the rabbit would be there in a moment.
 - c. They said that they would allow him to eat one of them a day.
 - d. They said that they would hide at the bottom of the well.
3. Why did the rabbit take the lion to the well in the middle of the forest?
 - a. So a lot of animals could see the rabbit walking with the lion
 - b. So the lion could attack the "other" lion
 - c. So the lion could drink water
 - d. So the other animals would be afraid of the rabbit
4. Which of the following is true at the end of the story?
 - a. The lion attacked another lion, and they both got hurt.
 - b. The lion cannot reply to the rabbit, so the rabbit wins.
 - c. The lion finally dies.
 - d. The lion is pleased by the rabbit's words, so it does not eat the rabbit.
5. What did the lion see when it looked in the well?



n.

adventure

[əd'ventʃər]

ماجراجویی

❖ An adventure is a fun or exciting thing that you do.

➤ Riding in the rough water was an adventure.

➤ سواری در آب های خشن (پرتلاطم) یک ماجراجویی بود.



v.

approach

[ə'prəʊtʃ]

نزدیک شدن

❖ To approach something means to move close to it.

➤ The boy approached his school.

➤ پسر به مدرسه خود نزدیک شد.



adv.

carefully

['ker]

با احتیاط، با دقت

❖ carefully means with great attention, especially to detail or safety.

➤ The baby carefully climbed down the stairs.

➤ کودک، با احتیاط از پله ها پایین آمد.



n.

chemical

['kemɪkl]

ماده شیمیایی، شیمیایی

❖ A chemical is something that scientists use in chemistry.

➤ The scientist mixed the chemicals.

➤ دانشمند، مواد شیمیایی را مخلوط کرد.



v.

create

[kri'eit]

ساختن، ایجاد کردن

- ❖ To create means to make something new.
- She created an igloo from blocks of snow.

➤ او یک کلبه ی اسکیمویی از بلوک های برفی ساخت.



adj.

evil

['i:vl]

شیطانی

- ❖ evil describes something or someone bad or cruel, not good.
- The evil figure scared us all.

➤ آن چهره ی شیطانی همه ی ما را ترساند.



n.

experiment

[ik'sperimən
t]

آزمایش

- ❖ An experiment is a test that you do to see what will happen.
- The student did an experiment in science class.

➤ دانش آموز، آزمایشی در کلاس علوم انجام داد.



v.

kill

[kɪl]

کشتن

- ❖ To kill someone or something is to make them die.
- I killed the fly with a fly swatter.

➤ من مگس را با مگس کش کشتم.



n.

laboratory

['læbrətɔ:ri]

آزمایشگاه

- ❖ A laboratory is a room where a scientist works.
- My mother works in a laboratory.

➤ مادرم در یک آزمایشگاه کار می‌کند.



n.

laugh

[læf]

خنده

- ❖ laugh is the sound made when someone is happy or a funny thing occurs.
- The sound of their laugh filled the room.

➤ صدای خنده شان در اتاق پیچید.



adj.

loud

[laʊd]

بلند

- ❖ If a sound is loud, it is strong and very easy to hear.
- The man's voice was so loud that we all could hear him.

➤ صدای مرد آنقدر بلند بود که همه ما می‌توانستیم صدایش را بشنویم.



adj.

nervous

['nɜ:vəs]

مضطرب، عصبی، نگران

- ❖ When a person is nervous, they think something bad will happen.
- The boy became nervous when he heard the news.

➤ وقتی پسر خبر را شنید، مضطرب شد.



n.

noise

[nɔɪz]

سر و صدا

- ❖ A noise is an unpleasant sound.
- The crying baby made a loud noise.

➤ کودک گریان، سر و صدای بلندی ایجاد کرد.



n.

project

['prɑ:dʒ]

پروژه، برنامه

- ❖ A project is a type of work that you do for school or a job.
- His afternoon work project was to paint the room green.

➤ پروژه کاری بعد از ظهر او، رنگ زدن اتاق به رنگ سبز بود.



v.

scare

[sker]

وحشت داشتن، ترسیدن

- ❖ To scare someone is to make them feel afraid.
- My uncle was scared by what he saw in the room.

➤ عموی من از آنچه در اتاق دید، وحشت داشت.



n.

secret

['si:kret]

راز، سر

- ❖ A secret is something that you do not tell other people.
- The two boys were sharing a secret.

➤ دو پسر داشتند یک راز را با هم به اشتراک می گذاشتند.





v.

shout

[ʃaʊt]

فریاد زدن، فریاد زدن

❖ To shout is to say something loudly.

➤ My boss shouted at me because I was late for work.

➤ رئیسم سرم فریاد زد چون برای کار دیر کردم.

v.

smell

[smel]

بو کردن، بوئیدن

❖ To smell something means to use your nose to sense it.

➤ The two friends smelled the flower.

➤ دو دوست، گل را بو کردند.

adj.

terrible

['terəbl]

خیلی بد، وحشتناک

❖ If something is terrible, it is very bad.

➤ The way he treated his classmate was terrible.

➤ طرز رفتار او با همکلاسیش خیلی بد بود.

adj.

worse

[wɜ:rs]

بدتر

❖ If something is worse, it is of poorer quality than another thing.

➤ Business was worse this month than last month.

➤ کسب و کار این ماه از ماه گذشته بدتر بود.



Exercise 1

Part A Circle two words that are related in each group.

1. a. laboratory b. experiment c. shout d. smell
2. a. shout b. carefully c. create d. laugh
3. a. nervous b. terrible c. approach d. worse
4. a. chemical b. secret c. loud d. noise
5. a. nervous b. adventure c. project d. scare

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. William wanted to make a new thing.
cre _____
2. I'm not having fun, so let's go on an exciting trip.
adven _____
3. Mrs. O'Malley asked me to get close to the desk and write my name.
app _____
4. Don't worry. I won't tell anyone your thing that other people don't know.
se _____
5. I have to finish my special job before I can go home.
p _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. When the jar hit the floor, _____.
___ a. it made a very loud sound ___ b. it shouted on the ground
2. When the sun went down, _____.
___ a. it was scared ___ b. the woods looked evil
3. To test his idea, the scientist _____.
___ a. went on an adventure ___ b. did an experiment
4. Your phone will not work _____.
___ a. someone kills the window
___ b. if you don't carefully pay attention to your power supply
5. The dog seemed unhappy when _____.
___ a. I approached it ___ b. it created me
6. Alex likes his class because he gets to _____.
___ a. do fun projects ___ b. be a laboratory
7. What is wrong with your hair? _____!
___ a. It is a chemical ___ b. It looks terrible
8. She's quite funny. We always _____.
___ a. laugh at her jokes ___ b. don't tell me your secret
9. Did you hear that? _____.
___ a. I just made it worse ___ b. There was a noise
10. I have a very important test tomorrow. _____.
___ a. I am nervous ___ b. I will smell it

The Laboratory

Mia's father had a **laboratory**, but she had no idea what was in it. Her dad always closed and locked the door when he went in. She knew that he used it to do **projects** for work. He never told Mia what these projects were.

One night, Mia **approached** the door to the laboratory. She stopped and thought, "I wonder what crazy **experiment** he is doing now." Suddenly, she heard a **loud noise**. It sounded like an **evil laugh**. The noise **scared** her, so she walked quickly back to her room.

The next night, her friend Liz came to her house. When Liz arrived, Mia told her about the night before. "Oh, it was **terrible**," she said.

"Why don't we see what is in there?" Liz asked. "It will be a fun **adventure!**"

Mia felt **nervous** about going into her father's laboratory, but she agreed. As always, the door was locked. They waited until Mia's father left the laboratory to eat dinner. "He didn't lock the door!" Liz said. "Let's go."

The laboratory was dark. The girls walked down the stairs **carefully**. Mia **smelled** strange **chemicals**. What terrible thing was her father **creating**?

Suddenly, they heard an evil laugh. It was even **worse** than the one Mia heard the night before. What if a monster was going to **kill** them? Mia had to do something. She **shouted** for help.

Mia's father ran into the room and turned on the lights. "Oh, no," he said. "You must have learned my **secret**."

"Your monster tried to kill us," Mia said.

"Monster?" he asked. "You mean this?" He had a pretty doll in his hands. The doll laughed. The laugh didn't sound so evil anymore. "I made this for your birthday. I wanted to give it to you then, but you can have it now. I hope you like it!"





آزمایشگاه

پدر میا یک آزمایشگاه داشت، اما او (میا) اصلاً نمی‌دانست که داخلش چیست. پدرش همیشه وقتی می‌رفت داخل در را می‌بست و قفل می‌کرد. او می‌دانست که پدرش از آن برای انجام پروژه‌های کاری استفاده می‌کند. او هیچوقت به میا نگفت که این پروژه‌ها چه بودند.

یک شب، میا به در آزمایشگاه نزدیک شد. ایستاد و فکر کرد "یعنی الان رو چه آزمایشی عجیبی داره کار میکنه؟" ناگهان صدای بلندی شنید. شبیه به خنده‌ای شیطانی بود. صدا او را ترساند بنابراین سریعاً به اتاق خود بازگشت.

شب بعد، دوستش لیز به خانه‌ی آن‌ها آمد. وقتی لیز رسید، میا به او در مورد شب گذشته گفت. "اُه، خیلی وحشتناک بود،" لیز گفت "چرا نبینیم اون تو چی هست؟ ماجراجویی جالبی میشه!" میا از رفتن به آزمایشگاه پدرش مضطرب بود، اما قبول کرد. مثل همیشه، در قفل بود. آن‌ها منتظر ماندند تا اینکه پدر میا برای صرف شام آزمایشگاه را ترک کرد.

لیز گفت "در رو قفل نکرد، بیا بریم"، آزمایشگاه تاریک بود. دخترها با احتیاط از پله‌ها پایین رفتند.

بوی مواد شیمیایی عجیبی به مشام میا رسید. پدرش در حال ساختن چه چیز وحشتناکی بود؟ ناگهان، صدای خنده‌ای شیطانی شنیدند. حتی بدتر از خنده‌ای بود که میا شب قبلش شنیده بود. اگر هیولایی می‌خواست آن‌ها را بکشد چه؟ میا باید کاری می‌کرد. او فریاد زد و درخواست کمک کرد. پدر میا به داخل اتاق دوید و چراغ‌ها را روشن کرد.

او گفت "اوه نه، حتما راز من رو فهمیدید" میا گفت "هیولای شما سعی کرد مارو بکشد" او پرسید "هیولا؟" "منظورت اینه؟" او یک عروسک زیبا در دستانش داشت. عروسک خندید. خنده دیگر چندان شیطانی به نظر نرسید.

"این رو برای تولدت درست کردم، می‌خواستم اون موقع بهت بدمش، ولی الان هم می‌تونی داشته باشیش. امیدوارم که ازش خوشت بیاد!"

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A girl's terrible experiment
 - b. A secret that two girls have
 - c. A girl who gets nervous about what's in a laboratory
 - d. A man who creates chemicals

2. What scares Mia when she approaches the door?
 - a. The room is very dark.
 - b. She hears a person shout.
 - c. She smells fire.
 - d. She hears a loud noise.

3. What is true of Mia in the story?
 - a. A monster kills her friend.
 - b. She does not like adventures.
 - c. She always locks the door of her room.
 - d. Her birthday has not come yet.

4. What project was Mia's father working on?
 - a. A doll to give to Mia for her birthday
 - b. A way to keep the door closed
 - c. A chemical that smells worse than fire
 - d. A monster that had an evil laugh

5. When did Mia and Liz go into the laboratory?



n.

alien

[ˈeɪliən]

موجود فضایی، بیگانه

- ❖ An alien is a creature from a different world.
- The alien came in peace.

➤ موجود فضایی با صلح و دوستی آمد.

prep.

among

[əˈmʌŋ]

در میان، در بین

- ❖ If you are among certain things, they are all around you.
- There was a red apple among green ones.

➤ در میان سیب های سبز، یک سیب سرخ وجود داشت.

n.

chart

[tʃɑ:rt]

نمودار، جدول

- ❖ A chart is a list of information.
- We used a chart to see how we had improved.

➤ ما از یک نمودار استفاده کردیم تا ببینیم چقدر پیشرفت کرده بودیم.

n.

cloud

[klaʊd]

ابر

- ❖ A cloud is a group of water drops in the sky.
- The sky was filled with white clouds.

➤ آسمان پر از ابرهای سفید بود.



v.

comprehend

[,kɑ:m]

درک کردن، فهمیدن

- ❖ To comprehend something is to understand it.
- Henry could not comprehend the message.

➤ هنری، پیغام را درک نکرد.



v.

describe

[dɪ'skraɪb]

توصیف کردن، شرح دادن، تعریف کردن

- ❖ To describe is to say or write what someone or something is like.
- They described their tree as colorful with gold ribbon and a star.
- آن‌ها درخت خود را به صورت رنگارنگ با روبان طلایی و یک ستاره توصیف کردند.



adv.

ever

['evə]

تا به حال، هر زمانی، همیشه، هر وقت، تا کنون

- ❖ ever means at any time.
- Going skiing last winter was the most fun I've ever had.
- رفتن به اسکی در زمستان گذشته، بهترین تفریحی بود که تا به حال تجربه کردم.



v.

fail

[feɪl]

موفق نشدن، شکست خوردن، ناموفق بودن

- ❖ To fail means you do not succeed in what you try to do.
- Since he failed to get the job, he was sad.

➤ از آنجا که موفق نشد تا شغل را بدست آورد، ناراحت بود.





adj.

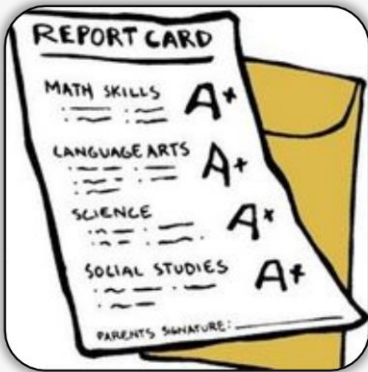
friendly

['frendli]

صمیمی، دوستانه

- ❖ friendly is behaving in a pleasant, kind way toward someone.
- The friendly animals came up to the girl.

➤ حیوانات مهربان، به سوی دختر آمدند.



n.

grade

[greɪd]

نمره، رتبه، درجه

- ❖ A grade is a score or mark given to someone's work.
- I managed to get good grades on my report card.

➤ من موفق شدم تا نمرات خوبی در کارنامه ام کسب کنم.



adv.

instead

[ɪn'sted]

به جای، در عوض

- ❖ instead means in place of.
- He ate the carrot instead of the ice cream.

➤ او به جای بستنی، هویج را خورد.



n.

library

['laɪ]

کتابخانه، کتابخانه

- ❖ A library is a place where you go to read books.
- The library at school is full of books.

➤ کتابخانه ی داخل مدرسه، پر از کتاب است.



n.

planet

['plænɪt]

سیاره



❖ A planet is a large round thing in space.

➤ Saturn is the planet with the ring around it.

➤ زحل، سیاره ای است که یک حلقه به دورش قرار دارد.

n.

report

[ri'pɔ:rt]

گزارش، مشق، تکالیف



❖ A report is something students write for school.

➤ Karen had trouble writing her report.

➤ کارن در نوشتن گزارش مشکل داشت.

adj.

several

['sevrəl]

چندین



❖ several is more than two but not many.

➤ He had to read several books for class.

➤ او مجبور بود تا چندین کتاب را برای کلاس بخواند.

v.

solve

[sə:lv]

حل کردن، یافتن پاسخ



❖ To solve something is to find an answer to it.

➤ All the students could easily solve the math problem.

➤ همه ی دانش آموزان، توانستند به راحتی مسئله ریاضی را حل کنند.



adv.

suddenly

[ˈsʌdnli]

ناگهان، به طور اتفاقی

- ❖ If something happens suddenly, it happens quickly and unexpectedly.
- I was suddenly surprised by the cake my friends brought me.
- من از کیکي که دوستانم برايم آوردند، به طور ناگهاني غافلگير شدم.



v.

suppose

[səˈpəʊz]

فرض کردن، گمان بردن، حدس زدن

- ❖ To suppose is to guess.
- I suppose I should go home now.
- فکر ميکنم که بايد الان به خانه بروم.



n.

universe

[ˈjuːnɪ]

جهان، دنيا

- ❖ The universe is the known or supposed objects in space.
- The universe is so large that it cannot be measured.
- جهان آنقدر بزرگ است که نمی توان آن را اندازه گرفت.



v.

view

[vjuː]

ديدن

- ❖ To view is to look at something.
- Michael likes to view himself in the mirror.
- مايکل دوست دارد تا خودش را روبروي آينه ببيند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. friendly
 - a. space
 - b. a list of information
 - c. acting or behaving nicely
 - d. a picture
2. grade
 - a. a score or mark on someone's work
 - b. a small copy of something larger
 - c. where you go to read books
 - d. a paper written for school
3. view
 - a. to find an answer
 - b. to not succeed in what you try to do
 - c. to guess
 - d. to look at something
4. ever
 - a. quickly and unexpectedly
 - b. at any time
 - c. all around you
 - d. to do the first thing
5. library
 - a. space and things in space
 - b. from a different world
 - c. a place where books are
 - d. a round thing in space
6. report
 - a. many of something
 - b. a round thing
 - c. drops of water in the sky
 - d. a paper
7. alien
 - a. something written for school
 - b. a creature from a different world
 - c. in place of
 - d. a small copy of something
8. chart
 - a. a paper
 - b. a copy
 - c. a group
 - d. a list
9. among
 - a. in the middle of something
 - b. a score or mark
 - c. at any time
 - d. to understand
10. solve
 - a. to guess
 - b. to look at something
 - c. to find an answer
 - d. to not succeed in what you try to do

Exercise 2

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- everything that exists in space
a. universe b. instead c. suddenly d. view
- not an exact amount but less than many
a. ever b. among c. several d. solve
- a creature from a different world
a. report b. alien c. chart d. among
- in place of
a. solve b. suppose c. fail d. instead
- to guess
a. fail b. suppose c. view d. comprehend

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. ever / describe

What would be the most awesome gift you've _____ received?
_____ your home to me.

2. alien(s) / chart

This _____ tells what time the TV shows will play.
I saw a movie about _____ from another planet.

3. planet / universe

I think the most interesting _____ is Saturn.
I wonder how the _____ began.

4. fail / solve

Do you like to _____ hard math problems?
If I do not know the answers, I will _____ the test.

5. several / view

_____ days ago, I lost my backpack.
The girls in my class like to _____ pictures of pop stars.

The Report

Lee sat **among** the books at the **library** and thought about his group project.

They had to turn it in soon, but he hadn't even started his part! Jack and Claire were in his group. They had worked hard. They were also very smart, and Lee didn't want them to get a bad **grade**.

Jack did the **report**. He wrote a lot of very good sentences and **described** things with great adjectives. Claire drew a nice map of the stars. Now, Lee needed to do his part of the project.

"Well, I **suppose** I need to start my model," Lee thought.

Making a model of a **planet** was really hard. Lee tried to read **several** books, but he couldn't **comprehend** any of the **charts**. "We're going to **fail** because of me!" Lee said. He put his head down on the table and said, "I wish I could see a planet, **instead** of having to read about it!"

Suddenly, there was a bright light. Lee was pulled from his chair, through the roof, and right into a strange ship! "Hello, kid," said an **alien**. "Did you ask for help?"

Lee told the **friendly** alien all about his project. The alien agreed to help Lee **solve** his problem. "First, we'll fly through space to **view** the **universe**. Then, I can help you make a model of my planet."

Soon, they were going through the **clouds**. They passed the moon. Then they viewed Mars. Lee was very excited. Instead of a bad grade, his group would have the best project **ever!**

"It's time to go home," the alien finally said. On the way back, he helped Lee make a model of the planet Mars. Soon, they were on Earth.

"Thanks," Lee said. "My model will be awesome!" Then he took his model and said goodbye to his new friend.





گزارش

لی در کتابخانه میان کتاب‌ها نشست و درباره‌ی پروژه‌ی گروهی خود فکر کرد. آنها مجبور بودند به زودی آن را تحویل دهند، ولی او هنوز بخش خودش را شروع نکرده بود. جک و کلر در گروه او بودند. آنها سخت کار کرده بودند. خیلی هم باهوش بودند و لی نمی‌خواست آنها نمره‌ی بدی بگیرند. جک گزارش را انجام داد. او جملات خیلی خوبی نوشت و چیزها را با صفاتی عالی توصیف کرد. کلر یک نقشه‌ی زیبا از ستاره‌ها کشید. حالا لی باید نقش خودش را در پروژه ایفا می‌کرد.

لی فکر کرد "خب، حالا باید مدلم رو شروع کنم" ساختن مدلی از یک سیاره خیلی سخت بود. لی سعی کرد چندین کتاب بخواند، اما نتوانست هیچ یک از نمودارها را درک کند. لی گفت: "به خاطر من این درس رو رد می‌شیم!" او سرش را روی میز گذاشت و گفت "ای کاش می‌توانستم یک سیاره ببینم به جای این که مجبور باشم در موردش مطلب بخونم"

ناگهان، نوری روشن و درخشان پدیدار شد. لی از صندلی خودش کنده شد، از سقف عبور کرد و درست وارد یک سفینه‌ای عجیب شد. یک بیگانه (آدم فضایی) گفت "سلام پسر، درخواست کمک کردی؟" لی به بیگانه‌ی مهربان همه چیز را در مورد پروژه خود توضیح داد. بیگانه قبول کرد تا به او در حل مشکلتش کمک کند. "اول در فضا پرواز می‌کنیم تا جهان را ببینیم." "بعد می‌تونم کمکت کنم که سیاره‌ی من رو مدلسازی کنی"

خیلی زود آنها از میان ابرها عبور کردند. از ماه گذر کردند. بعدش مریخ را دیدند. لی خیلی هیجان‌زده شده بود. به‌جای یک نمره‌ی بد، گروه او بهترین پروژه تا به حال را خواهد داشت. بیگانه سرانجام گفت: "وقتشه که بری خونه." در راه برگشت، او به لی کمک کرد تا مدلی از سیاره مریخ بسازد. خیلی زود آنها روی زمین بودند. لی گفت "مرسی، مدل من عالی خواهد بود." سپس مدلتش را گرفت و از دوست جدید خود خداحافظی کرد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why a smart boy fails a class
 - b. A boy's trip into the universe
 - c. A boy who wants to write instead of draw
 - d. An alien living in a library

2. What is Lee unable to comprehend?
 - a. How to make a model of a planet
 - b. Why there are maps among the books
 - c. Where the best place is to view the stars
 - d. How to read the information in a chart

3. What can you suppose is true of the group's report?
 - a. It has three sentences.
 - b. It must describe clouds.
 - c. It is not due until several days.
 - d. It is about the stars and planets.

4. What did the alien want to do to help Lee?
 - a. Get several books from the library
 - b. Hear the best report ever
 - c. Make the model of a planet
 - d. Solve his own problems

5. What planet did Lee see on his trip?



adj.

appropriate

[ə'prɒʊ]

مناسب، شایسته

- ❖ When a thing is appropriate, it is right or normal.
- It's appropriate to wear a suit when you go to the office.
- مناسب است که هنگام مراجعه به دفتر کار، کت و شلوار بپوشید.



v.

avoid

[ə'vɔɪd]

دوری کردن، اجتناب کردن

- ❖ To avoid something is to stay away from it.
- avoid the broken bottle on the floor.
- از شیشه ی شکسته ی روی زمین، دوری کن.



v.

behave

[bi'heɪv]

رفتار کردن

- ❖ To behave is to act in a particular way, especially to be good.
- She always behaves well when her father is around.
- او همیشه وقتی پدرش دور و برش است، خوب رفتار می کند.



adj.

calm

[kɑ:m]

آرام، ساکت

- ❖ When someone is calm, they do not get excited or upset.
- A nice warm bath makes me feel so calm.
- یک حمام گرم خوب، آرامم می کند.



n.

concern

[kən]

نگرانی

- ❖ concern is a feeling of worry.
- I was filled with concern after reading the newspaper.
- بعد از خواندن روزنامه، پر از استرس و نگرانی شدم.



adj.

content

['kɑ:ntent]

خوشحال، راضی

- ❖ To be content is to be happy and not want more.
- The baby looked very content sitting on the floor.
- کودک بسیار خوشحال به نظر می رسید که روی زمین نشسته است.



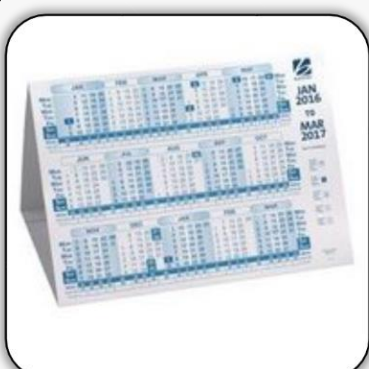
v.

expect

[ɪk'spekt]

انتظار داشتن

- ❖ If you expect something to happen, you believe it will happen.
- I expect the bus to be here very soon.
- انتظار دارم که اتوبوس به زودی برسد.



adv.

frequently

['fri:kwəntli]

اغلب، مکررا، بارها، غالبا

- ❖ When something happens frequently, it happens often.
- We meet frequently, either at the beginning or ending of the week.
- ما اغلب همدیگر را در آغاز و یا پایان هفته ملاقات می کنیم.



n.

habit

['hæbit]

عادت

- ❖ A habit is a thing that you do often.
- Smoking is a bad habit that can kill you.
- سیگار کشیدن، یک عادت بد است که می‌تواند شما را بکشد.



v.

instruct

[in'strʌkt]

آموزش دادن، تعلیم دادن

- ❖ To instruct is to teach.
- My teacher instructs us in several subjects.
- معلم من، در چندین عنوان درسی به ما آموزش می‌دهد.



n.

issue

['ɪʃu:]

موضوع، مسأله

- ❖ An issue is an important topic.
- The men spoke about issue that were important to the people.
- آقایان، در مورد مسئله ای که برای مردم اهمیت داشت صحبت کردند.



pron

none

[nʌn]

هیچ کدام، هیچ یک، هیچی

- ❖ none means not any of someone or something.
- He spent all his money. There is none left.
- او تمام پول خود را خرج کرد. هیچ چیز باقی نمانده است.





adj.

patient

[ˈpeɪʃnt]

صبور

❖ If a person is patient, they don't become angry or upset easily.

➤ I had to be patient and wait until 5 o'clock to leave.

➤ مجبور بودم صبور باشم و تا ساعت ۵ عصر منتظر بمانم که مرخص شوم.



adj.

positive

[ˈpɑːzɪv]

مثبت

❖ If something is positive, it is good.

➤ She has a positive future ahead of her after finishing college.

➤ او بعد از اتمام دوره دانشگاه، آینده‌ای مثبت در پیش دارد.



v.

punish

[ˈpʌnɪʃ]

تنبیه کردن

❖ To punish means to make someone suffer for breaking the rules or laws.

➤ To punish me, my teacher had me stand in the corner.

➤ معلم برای اینکه مرا تنبیه کند، مجبورم کرد تا در گوشه ای بایستم.



v.

represent

[ˌreprɪˈzɛnt]

نماینده بودن، نشان دادن، نمایندگی کردن

❖ To represent is to speak or act for a person or group.

➤ My lawyer will represent me in court.

➤ وکیل من در دادگاه نمایندگی من را خواهد کرد.



v.

shake

[ʃeɪk]

دست دادن، تکان دادن



- ❖ To shake is to move back and forth or up and down quickly.
- When people shake hands, it usually means they agree.
- وقتی مردم با هم دست می‌دهند، معمولا به این معنی است که با هم موافق هستند.

v.

spread

[spred]

پخش کردن، انتشار یافتن، گسترش یافتن



- ❖ To spread is to move quickly to more places.
- I like to spread butter on my toast.
- دوست دارم روی نان تست خودم کره بمالم.

v.

stroll

[strɔʊl]

قدم زدن، آهسته قدم زدن، راه رفتن آهسته



- ❖ To stroll means to walk slowly and calmly.
- My dog and I strolled through the park today.
- من و سگم، امروز توی پارک آهسته قدم زدیم.

n.

village

['vɪlɪdʒ]

روستا، دهکده



- ❖ A village is a very small town.
- There are only a few houses in my village.
- فقط چند خانه در دهکده من وجود دارد.

Exercise 1

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The story about the police dog got to many people in town.
spr _____
2. I was happy to sit and listen to music all night.
con _____
3. The house will move back and forth if a strong wind blows.
sh _____
4. I waited for the monster to come out of the cave.
ex _____
5. I didn't want to talk to my sister, so I stayed away from her.
av _____

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. Before Kimberly sang, _____.
___ a. the teacher reminded everyone to behave
___ b. she instructed the people to go to sleep
2. When we heard the loud sound, _____.
___ a. I turned around out of habit
___ b. there was none left
3. The man told us to be quiet, _____.
___ a. so I decided to stroll through town
___ b. so I knew it was not appropriate to talk
4. They asked us to wait, _____.
___ a. so I felt concerned about them
___ b. so I had to be patient
5. I met a new friend yesterday, and _____.
___ a. frequently I would sit and read
___ b. I shook his hand

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. The girl's **positive** words made me feel better.
___ b. We took the **village** out of the house.
2. ___ a. The **calm** girl yelled a lot.
___ b. The team members asked Kate to **represent** them at the dinner.
3. ___ a. I was **content** to stay at home by the warm fire.
___ b. My mom **punished** me for doing my homework.
4. ___ a. The man **expected** me to say yes.
___ b. The **issue** did not taste very good.
5. ___ a. I **behaved** wisely while I was asleep.
___ b. I **avoided** my friend because she had laughed at me.
6. ___ a. At first I was nervous, but then I started to feel **calm**.
___ b. The angry bear looked **content**.
7. ___ a. When my dog died, it made me feel **positive**.
___ b. Few people live in the **village**.
8. ___ a. I wanted to **avoid** food, so I bought a sandwich.
___ b. The class needed to talk about the **issue**.
9. ___ a. The students **behaved** quite well for their new teacher.
___ b. Students are **expected** to be late to class.
10. ___ a. I was **punished** because I broke the window.
___ b. The man **represented** the award to the girl.

The Dog's Bell

John's dog was a bad dog. He bit people **frequently**. John had great **concern** about this. It was not an **appropriate** way for a dog to **behave**. His friends in the **village** always **expected** the dog to bite them. The news about John's dog **spread** through the village. **None** of the people wanted to go to John's house.

John tried to **instruct** the dog to behave, but it never worked. He tried to be **patient** and teach the dog to be **calm**. That also didn't work. John didn't want to **punish** the dog. "How will I stop my dog's bad **habit**?" John asked himself.

John's friend came to talk to him about the **issue**. During their important meeting, his friend said, "The people in the village asked me to **represent** them. We want your dog to stop this habit. Why don't you put a bell around the dog's neck? This way, we would hear your dog coming down the street."

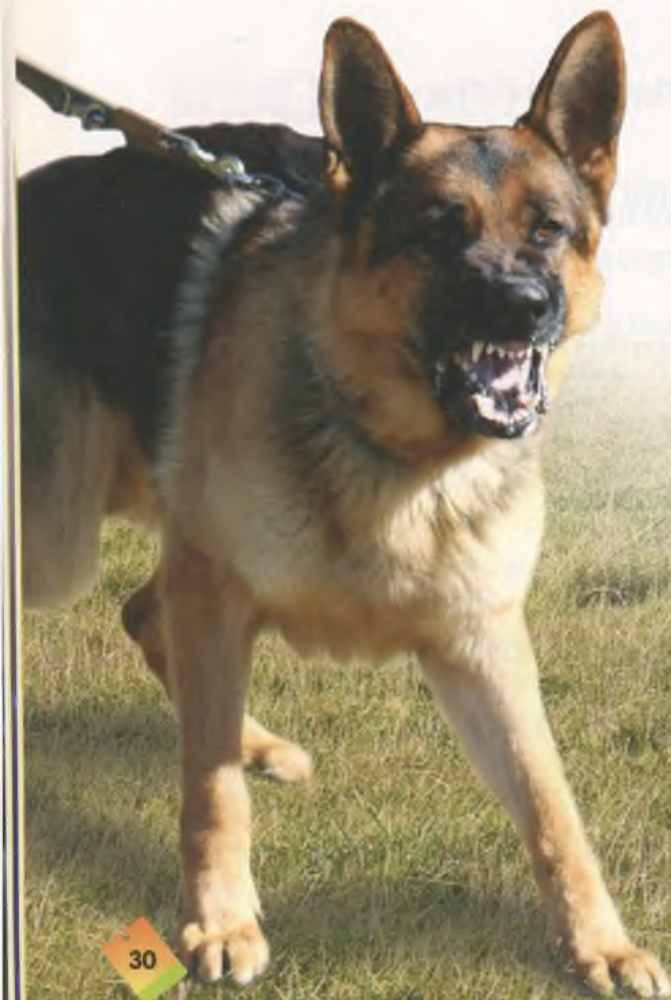
John thought this was a great idea. Now, people could stay away from the dog. It would not be able to bite anyone anymore.

The dog liked the bell, too. People looked at him when they heard his bell. This made the dog very **content**. He liked the song the bell played when he walked.

One day, John's dog **strolled** through the village and met some other dogs. He expected them to want a bell like his. But they laughed at his bell. They said the bell made people **avoid** him. John's dog **shook** his head. "No, they look at me because they like the bell."

The other dogs said, "You have the wrong idea of what makes you popular. Of course they like your bell. It tells them where you are so they can avoid you. You aren't able to bite them anymore!"

You see, being popular isn't something **positive** when it's for the wrong reason.





زنگوله‌ی سگ

سگِ جان سگ بدی بود. به طور مداوم مردم را گاز می‌گرفت. جان خیلی نگران این قضیه بود. این روشی (حالتی) مناسب برای رفتار یک سگ نبود. دوستانش در روستا همیشه منتظر بودند که سگ آنها را گاز بگیرد. خبرها در مورد سگِ جان در تمام روستا پخش شده بود. هیچ کسی نمی‌خواست به خانه‌ی جان برود. جان سعی کرد سگش را تربیب کند که درست رفتار کند، اما جواب نداد. سعی کرد با صبر و حوصله به سگش یاد دهد که آرام باشد اما این هم جواب نداد. جان نمی‌خواست سگ را تنبیه کند. جان از خودش پرسید "چطور می‌تونم رفتار بد سگم رو متوقف کنم؟"

دوست جان نزد او آمد تا در مورد این موضوع صحبت کنند. در طول جلسه مهم آنها، دوستش گفت "افراد روستا از من خواستند تا نماینده آنها باشم. ما می‌خواهیم که سگت از این رفتارش دست بکشد. چرا یک زنگوله دور گردنش نمی‌بندی؟ اینطوری صدای پایین اومدن اون از خیابان رو می‌شنویم" جان فکر کرد که این ایده عالی است.

اکنون مردم می‌توانستند از سگ فاصله بگیرند. دیگر نمی‌توانست کسی را گاز بگیرد. سگ هم زنگوله را دوست داشت. وقتی که مردم صدای زنگوله او را می‌شنیدند، به او نگاه می‌کردند. سگ از این بابت خیلی راضی بود. صدای زنگوله هنگام راه رفتن را دوست داشت.

یک روز، سگ جان در روستا قدم می‌زد و سگ‌های دیگر را دید. انتظار داشت آنها هم زنگوله‌ای مانند مال او بخواهند. اما آنها به زنگوله او خندیدند. گفتند که این زنگوله باعث می‌شود مردم از او دوری کنند. سگ جان سرش را تکان داد. "نه، آنها به من نگاه می‌کنند چونکه زنگوله را دوست دارند"

سگ‌های دیگر گفتند "تو ایده‌ی (فکر) اشتباهی داری از اینکه چه چیزی تو رو محبوب می‌کنه. البته که زنگولت رو دوست دارند. به اونها می‌گه که تو کجا هستی بنابراین می‌تونن از تو دوری کنن. دیگه نمی‌تونن اونا رو گاز بگیرن."

می‌بینید، محبوب بودن وقتی که به دلایل نادرست باشد چیز مثبتی نیست.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story mainly about?
 - a. A dog that is frequently bad
 - b. A dog's stroll through town
 - c. A content man and his dog
 - d. A village that liked John's dog
2. What is true of the dog?
 - a. He likes none of John's friends.
 - b. He shakes his head too much.
 - c. He bites when it's not appropriate.
 - d. He expects people to be calm around him.
3. Why did the issue with the dog bother John?
 - a. People didn't think of John in a positive way.
 - b. People avoided going to John's house.
 - c. People didn't want John to represent them.
 - d. People didn't like the song that John played.
4. What did John do to stop the dog's bad habit?
 - a. He instructed the dog on learning tricks.
 - b. He punished the dog for biting.
 - c. He was patient and showed concern.
 - d. He put a bell around the dog's neck.
5. What did the other dogs say about the bell?



adj.

aware

[ə'wer]

آگاه، مطلع، با خبر

- ❖ If you are aware of something, you know about it.
- I was not aware of the ringing phone.

➤ من از زنگ زدن تلفن، آگاه نبودم.



adv.

badly

['bædli]

به طور بدی، به طرز بدی

- ❖ badly means in a severe or harmful way.
- He hurt his arm badly playing with friends.

➤ او در هنگام بازی با دوستان به دستش آسیب بدی رساند.



v.

belong

[bi']

متعلق بودن

- ❖ If something belongs to you, you own it.
- The blue suit belongs to Paul.

➤ کت و شلوار آبی، متعلق به پاول است.



v.

continue

[kən'tɪnju:]

ادامه پیدا کردن، ادامه دادن

- ❖ To continue something is to keep doing it.
- She stood under her umbrella as the rain continued to fall.
- او هنگامی که بارش باران ادامه پیدا کرد، زیر چتر خود ایستاد.



n.

error

[ˈerər]

خطا، اشتباه

- ❖ An error is something you do wrong.
- I made an error on my report, so my boss was angry.
- من در گزارش خود مرتکب خطایی شدم، رئیسم به همین دلیل عصبانی بود.



n.

experience

[ɪk]

تجربه

- ❖ An experience is something you have seen or done.
- Rock climbing was a fun experience.
- صخره نوردی یک تجربه جالب بود.



n.

field

[fi:ld]

زمین، مزرعه، میدان

- ❖ A field is a big area of land.
- The field of flowers looked so pretty.
- مزرعه ی گل، بسیار زیبا به نظر می‌رسید.



v.

hurt

[hɜ:rt]

صدمه دیدن، آسیب زدن

- ❖ To hurt is to do something that makes you feel pain.
- She hurt her leg falling down the stairs.
- پایش در هنگام پایین آمدن از پله، صدمه دیده است.





n.

judgment

['dʒʌdʒmənt]

نظر، عقیده، قضاوت، داوری

❖ judgment is the ability to form opinions or decisions.

➤ It's good judgment to recycle your aluminum cans.

➤ نظر خوبی است که قوطی‌های آلومینیومی خود را بازیافت کنید.

adv.

likely

['laɪkli]

احتمالاً، شاید

❖ If something likely happens, it will probably happen.

➤ I will likely stay at home and watch TV tonight.

➤ من احتمالاً امشب در خانه خواهم ماند و تلویزیون تماشا خواهم کرد.

adj.

normal

['nɔ:rl]

نرمال، عادی

❖ If something is normal, it is not strange nor surprising to you.

➤ It is normal for me to bathe every night.

➤ برای من عادی (روتین) است که هر شب حمام کنم.

adj.

rare

['rer]

کمیاب، نادر، بعید

❖ If something is rare, you do not see it very often.

➤ It is rare for him to miss his flight.

➤ خیلی بعید است که او پروازش را از دست بدهد.





v.

relax

[ri'laeks]

استراحت کردن

❖ To relax is to rest.

➤ The frog relaxed in the warm sun.

➤ قورباغه در آفتاب گرم، استراحت کرد.



v.

request

[ri'kwest]

درخواست کردن

❖ To request something is to ask for it.

➤ The little girl requested a special gift from Santa Claus.

➤ دخترک یک هدیه ویژه از بابا نوئل درخواست کرد.



v.

reside

[ri'zaid]

اقامت داشتن، سکونت داشتن

❖ To reside means to live somewhere permanently or for a long time.

➤ My brother and his family reside in a lovely house on the beach.

➤ برادرم و خانواده‌اش، در یک خانه زیبا در کنار ساحل اقامت دارند.



n.

result

[ri'zʌlt]

نتیجه، اثر

❖ A result is something that happens because of something else.

➤ As a result of all the rain, the man had to climb on the roof.

➤ در نتیجه‌ی باران زیاد، مرد ناچار شد از پشت بام بالا برود.



v.

roll

[rɒl]

غلت دادن، غلتیدن

- ❖ To roll is to move by turning over and over.
- You must roll the ball into the pins when you bowl.

➤ شما باید در هنگام بازی بولینگ، توپ را به درون پین ها غلت دهید.



prep.

since

[sɪns]

از (وقتی که)، از وقتی، از زمانی (تا به حال)

- ❖ since is used to talk about a past event still happening now.
- since 1992, he has been driving that car.

➤ او از سال 1992، دارد با این ماشین رانندگی می کند.



adj.

visible

['vɪzəbl]

قابل رؤیت، پدیدار، نمایان

- ❖ If something is visible, it can be seen.
- The moon and stars were visible in the night sky.

➤ ماه و ستاره ها در آسمان شب قابل رویت بودند.



adj.

wild

[waɪld]

وحشی

- ❖ If something is wild, it is found in nature.
- You should be careful around a fox, because it is a wild animal.

➤ تو باید در اطراف یک روباه، محتاط باشی؛ چون آن، یک حیوان وحشی است.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. roll
 - a. to rest
 - b. a rule
 - c. to grow
 - d. to move by turning
2. error
 - a. a nice man
 - b. very old
 - c. something you do wrong
 - d. open land
3. hurt
 - a. to disagree
 - b. how much something costs
 - c. from nature
 - d. to do something that causes pain
4. reside
 - a. to relax
 - b. to live in a place for long
 - c. something that can be seen
 - d. to know about something
5. relax
 - a. to keep going
 - b. a large group of people
 - c. to rest
 - d. to move
6. continue
 - a. to be in the right place
 - b. to stay
 - c. to have
 - d. to keep doing something
7. normal
 - a. the perfect amount
 - b. friendly
 - c. not strange
 - d. different
8. rare
 - a. quiet
 - b. not full
 - c. interesting
 - d. not seen often
9. visible
 - a. from nature
 - b. easy to see
 - c. new
 - d. normal
10. field
 - a. open land
 - b. to reside
 - c. a thing
 - d. a tool

Exercise 2

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. in a severe or harmful way
 a. continue b. wild c. judgment d. badly
2. the ability to form opinions or decisions
 a. experience b. reside c. judgment d. result
3. to fit or be in the right place
 a. roll b. relax c. continue d. belong
4. not strange or different
 a. normal b. visible c. uncommon d. aware
5. to do something that makes you feel pain
 a. rare b. hurt c. error d. since

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. My day at school was not strange.
 nor _____
2. The bird was from nature.
 wi _____
3. Sorry I can't come; I'm feeling discomfort in my body.
 h _____
4. He's going to rest instead of going to the movie.
 r _____
5. The man walked through a large area of land.
 f _____

The Jackal and the Sun Child

A jackal is a **wild** dog with a big black back. It **resides** in the desert. But how did the jackal get his black back? This was how it happened.

One day, the jackal saw a girl. She was sitting upon a rock. She was not a **normal** child. She was a **rare** and beautiful sun child. She was bright and warm like the sun. The child saw the jackal and smiled.

She said, "Jackal, I have been **relaxing** on this rock for too long. I must get home soon. But, I am slow and you are fast. You will **likely** get me home more quickly." Then she **requested**, "Will you carry me home? If you do, I'll give you a gift. This necklace **belongs** to me, but I will give it to you."

The wild jackal agreed. So the sun child sat on the dog's back. They started to walk. But soon, the jackal felt ill. The sun child was very hot on his back. The heat was **hurting** his back very **badly**. "I made a terrible **error** in **judgment**," he thought. He shouldn't have agreed to carry her. So he asked her to get off.

But she did not. The jackal's back **continued** to get hotter and hotter. He had to get away from the sun child. So he made a plan. First, he ran as fast as he could.

He hoped the sun child would fall off. But she did not. So when the sun child was looking at the sky, not **aware** of the jackal's next plan, he jumped into a **field** of flowers. As a **result**, the child **rolled** off his back. The jackal ran away.

But the sun child left a mark on the jackal's back, a **visible** black mark. Ever **since** his **experience** with the sun child, the jackal has had a black back.





شغال و فرزند آفتاب

یک روز شغال دختری را دید. دختر روی یک صخره نشسته بود. او کودکی عادی نبود. بچه‌ی آفتاب، زیبا و کمیاب بود. مثل خورشید روشن و گرم بود. کودک شغال را دید و لبخند زد.

او گفت: شغال، من مدت زمان زیادی روی این صخره در حال استراحت بوده‌ام. باید خیلی زود برم خونه.

اما من کند هستم و تو سریع. تو احتمالا من رو سریع‌تر به خونه می‌رسونی. بعد او درخواست کرد «میشه من رو به خونه ببری؟ (حمل کنی؟) اگر این کار رو بکنی، بهت یک هدیه می‌دم. این گردنبند متعلق به من است، اما میدمش به تو.

شغال وحشی قبول کرد. بنابراین فرزند خورشید بر روی پشت سگ نشست. آنها شروع به حرکت کردند. اما خیلی زود شغال احساس کرد ناخوش است. فرزند آفتاب بر پشت او خیلی داغ بود. حرارت داشت به شدت به پشت او آسیب می‌رساند. با خودش فکر کرد: تصمیم اشتباهی گرفتم. نباید با حمل کردن او (بردن او) موافقت می‌کرد.

بنابراین از او خواست که پیاده شود. ولی او این کار را نکرد. پشت شغال رفته رفته داغ‌تر و داغ‌تر شد. باید از دست فرزند آفتاب خلاص می‌شد. پس نقشه‌ای کشید. اول، تا جایی که می‌توانست سریع دوید. امیدوار بود که فرزند آفتاب بیافتد. اما این اتفاق نیفتاد.

وقتی که بچه‌ی خورشید به آسمان نگاه می‌کرد و خبری از نقشه‌ی بعدی شغال نداشت، او به میدانی پر از گل پرید. در نتیجه، بچه از پشتش غلت خورد. شغال فرار کرد.

اما فرزند خورشید یک علامت روی پشت شغال به جا گذاشت، یک علامت سیاه مشخص. از زمان تجربه او با فرزند خورشید، شغال پشت سیاه رنگ داشته است.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why the sun child has a beautiful smile
 - b. Why a wild dog hurt a sun child
 - c. An error that the sun child once made
 - d. How the jackal got his visible black mark
2. What kind of girl was the sun child?
 - a. She was rare and beautiful.
 - b. She was likely very shy.
 - c. She was an ill child.
 - d. She was a normal child.
3. Why did the jackal run into the field?
 - a. To continue his journey
 - b. It wanted a new place to reside.
 - c. To take a nap and relax
 - d. To get away from the sun child
4. What happened at the end of the story?
 - a. The sun child forgot the experience.
 - b. The sun child became aware of the jackal's black back.
 - c. The sun child rolled off the jackal's back.
 - d. The sun child has stayed upon the jackal's back since then.
5. What did the sun child request?



n.

advantage

[əd]

مزیت، برتری



- ❖ An advantage is something that helps you.
- Being tall is an advantage to a basketball player.

➤ قد بلند، یک مزیت برای بازیکن بسکتبال است.

v.

cause

[kɔ:z]

باعث شدن، موجب شدن



- ❖ To cause is to make something happen.
- The cold weather caused her to get sick.

➤ هوای سرد باعث شد تا او مریض شود.

n.

choice

[tʃɔɪs]

انتخاب



- ❖ A choice is the act or possibility of picking something.
- I had my choice of five doors to open.

➤ من انتخابی برای باز کردن پنج در رو داشتم.

n.

community

[kə'mju:nəti]

جامعه، انجمن، اجتماع، محله



- ❖ A community is a group of people who live together.
- The kids from my community usually play together.

➤ بچه های محله ما معمولاً با هم بازی می کنند.



adj.

dead

[ded]

مرده



- ❖ To be dead is to not be alive.
- A dead person is usually buried in the ground.

➤ یک فرد مرده، معمولاً در زمین دفن می شود.

n.

distance

['distəns]

فاصله، مسافت



- ❖ The distance between two things is how far it is between them.
- The distance between the Earth and the Moon is 384,400 kilometers.

➤ فاصله بین زمین و ماه 384400 کیلومتر است.

v.

escape

[i'skeip]

فرار کردن



- ❖ To escape is to run away from something bad.
- The butterfly could not escape from the cage.

➤ پروانه نتوانست از قفس فرار کند.

v.

face

[feis]

مواجه شدن



- ❖ If you face a problem, you deal with it.
- My sister and I have to find a better way to face our differences.

➤ من و خواهرم باید راهی بهتر برای مواجه شدن با اختلافات خود پیدا کنیم.



v.

follow

[ˈfɑ:lɒʊ]

به دنبال رفتن، پیروی کردن، دنبال کردن

- ❖ To follow means to go behind someone and go where they go.
- The little boy followed his mother home.

➤ پسرک به دنبال مادرش تا خانه رفت.



n.

fright

[fraɪt]

ترس، وحشت، هراس

- ❖ fright is the feeling of being scared.
- She was filled with fright.

➤ او از ترس آکنده شده بود.



n.

ghost

[ɡəʊst]

روح

- ❖ A ghost is the spirit of a dead person.
- Many people are afraid of ghosts.

➤ بسیاری از مردم از ارواح می ترسند.



n.

individual

[ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl]

فرد، شخص

- ❖ An individual is one person.
- Only one individual could win the bicycle race.

➤ فقط یک فرد می توانست مسابقه دوچرخه را ببرد.



n.

pet

[pet]

حیوان خانگی

- ❖ A pet is an animal that lives with people.
- Out of all my pets, the dog is my favorite.
- از بین تمام حیوانات خانگی من، سگ مورد علاقه من است.



v.

reach

[ri:tʃ]

رسیدن

- ❖ To reach means to arrive at a place.
- I was happy to finally reach my destination.
- خوشحال بودم که بالاخره به مقصد خود رسیدم.



v.

return

[ri'tɜ:rn]

برگشتن

- ❖ To return is to go back to a place.
- I was happy to return home to my mom after school.
- خوشحال بودم که بعد از مدرسه برگشتم خانه پیش مادرم.



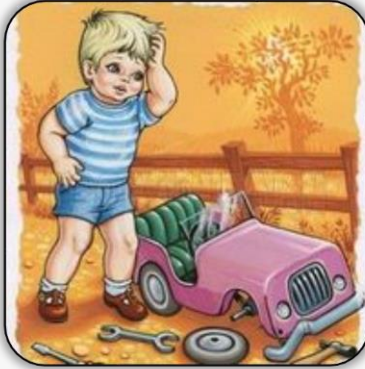
v.

survive

[sə'r'v]

جان سالم به در بردن، زنده ماندن

- ❖ To survive is to stay alive. (despite some danger or illness)
- My dog survived her fall into the water.
- سگ من از افتادن در آب، جان سالم به در برد.



adj.

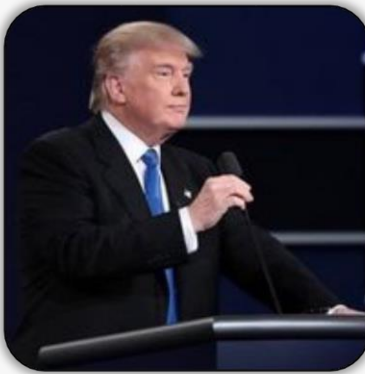
upset

[ʌp'set]

ناراحت

- ❖ To be upset is to be unhappy about something.
- She was upset because she broke her toy.

➤ او ناراحت بود چون اسباب بازی‌هایش را شکسته بود.



n.

voice

[vɔɪs]

صدا

- ❖ A voice is the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.
- He used a microphone, so everyone could hear his voice.

➤ او از یک میکروفون استفاده کرد تا همه صدایش رو بشنوند.



n.

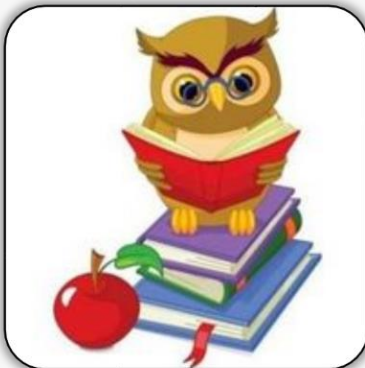
weather

['weðər]

آب و هوا

- ❖ The weather is the condition of the air: hot, rainy, windy, etc.
- The weather can be sunny, rainy, or cold.

➤ آب و هوا می‌تواند آفتابی، بارانی و یا سرد باشد.



adj.

wise

[waɪz]

عاقل

- ❖ To be wise is to use experience and intelligence to make good choices.
- Many people believe that owls are very wise animals.

➤ بسیاری از مردم بر این باورند که جغدها حیوانات بسیار عاقلی هستند.

Exercise 1

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Sam was happy to go back to his house.
re _____ n
2. Her grandfather is a smart old man.
wi _____
3. William wanted an animal to live with.
p _____
4. He studies what the condition of the air is like.
we _____
5. I have to deal with my rising credit card bill.
f _____

Part B Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. **fright / ghost**
The _____ lives in the old house.
A scary place might cause _____.
2. **dead / upset**
The tree fell down because it was _____.
I was _____ when I got a bad grade on the test.
3. **advantage / reached**
After 10 hours of driving, I finally _____ California.
He is smart and has a(n) _____ in class.
4. **escape / distance**
He wanted to _____ from the room.
He lived a long _____ from the school.
5. **community / individual**
The man is a nice _____.
The town is a small _____.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. It rained for two days, _____.
___ a. and caused the river to rise ___ b. it was dead
2. As I was walking home from school today, _____.
___ a. I was a ghost
___ b. I hardly noticed that a dog was following me
3. After my vacation, _____.
___ a. I returned to work ___ b. I was an advantage
4. Many people like him _____.
___ a. because they make him upset ___ b. because he is a wise man
5. They are afraid of the king because _____.
___ a. he has too much power ___ b. he has a quiet voice
6. I love my dog. _____.
___ a. He's my favorite pet ___ b. He causes fright
7. I like living here because _____.
___ a. I make many choices ___ b. it is a nice community
8. I want to live in Hawaii because _____.
___ a. it has good weather ___ b. smoking causes lung cancer
9. The storm was very bad, but _____.
___ a. all of the people survived ___ b. it went a very long distance
10. We closed the door, but _____.
___ a. the dog escaped ___ b. it was an individual

The Friendly Ghost

A nice woman lived by a large river. She loved children. She wanted to help them in any way. She loved her **community**, and everyone in the community loved her. She lived a very long time and became very **wise**.

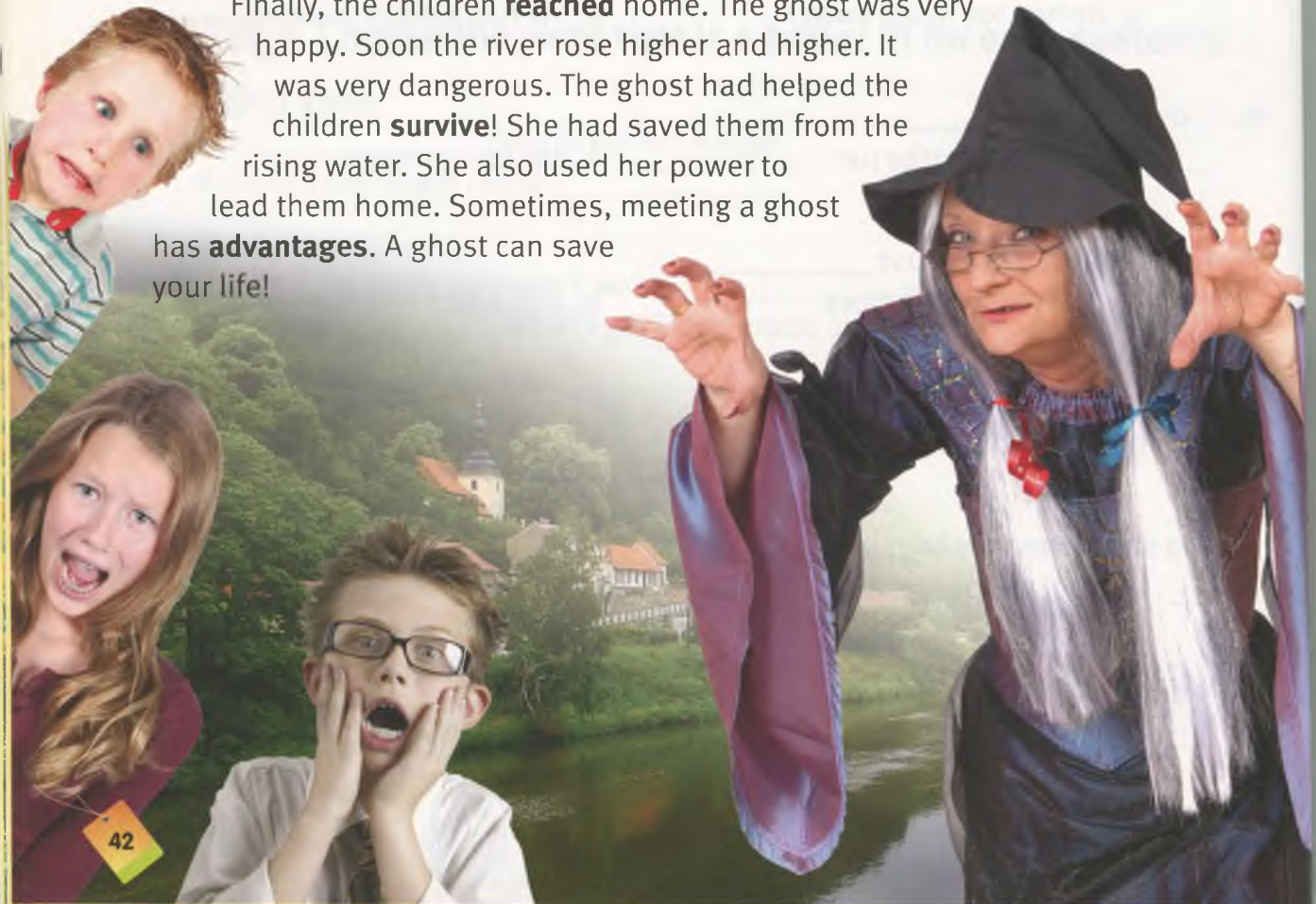
When she died, she became a **ghost**. She was **dead**, but every night she **returned** to her community. She wanted to help children and not to **cause** them **fright**. But she had a scary **voice**. Children were afraid of her, but the ghost was a good one. She only scared them to help them.

One night, some children and a dog were playing by the river. They were having fun with their **pet**. But they were far from home. Then the **weather** became bad. It rained and rained. The river was rising. It was very dark. The children knew they were lost. They needed to go north, but they didn't know which direction it was. When the moon came out, they saw a ghost by the river. The ghost said, "Go away!"

The children felt great fright. They knew it was a ghost. Then the ghost moved closer. She yelled again, "Go away!" The children became very **upset**. Some of them began to cry. The children knew they had a **choice**: they could **escape**, or they could stay and **face** this scary **individual** in the dark.

The children ran a long **distance** away. The ghost **followed** them all the way.

Finally, the children **reached** home. The ghost was very happy. Soon the river rose higher and higher. It was very dangerous. The ghost had helped the children **survive!** She had saved them from the rising water. She also used her power to lead them home. Sometimes, meeting a ghost has **advantages**. A ghost can save your life!





روح مهربان

زنی خوب در کنار یک رودخانه بزرگ زندگی می‌کرد. عاشق بچه‌ها بود. به هر طریقی که شده می‌خواست به آن‌ها کمک کند. عاشق محله‌ی خود بود و همه در محله عاشق او بودند. او برای مدتی زیاد زندگی کرد و بسیار عاقل و دانا شد.

وقتی که مرد، به روح تبدیل شد. مرده بود، ولی هر شب به محله‌اش باز می‌گشت. می‌خواست به بچه‌ها کمک کند، نه این که آنها را بترساند. اما صدایی ترسناک داشت. بچه‌ها از او می‌ترسیدند اما او روح خوبی (از اون خوباش) بود. فقط برای کمک به آنها، آنها را می‌ترساند.

یک شب، چند بچه و یک سگ در کنار رودخانه بازی می‌کردند. با حیوان خانگی خود خوش می‌گذرانند. اما فاصله‌ی زیادی با خانه داشتند. هوا بد شد. باران بارید و بارید. سطح آب رودخانه در حال بالا آمدن بود. خیلی تاریک بود. بچه‌ها می‌دانستند که گم شده‌اند. باید به شمال می‌رفتند، اما نمی‌دانستند که چه جهتی بود.

وقتی که ماه ظاهر شد، روحی در کنار رودخانه دیدند. روح گفت: "از اینجا برید" بچه‌ها به شدت احساس ترس کردند. می‌دانستند که یک روح است. روح نزدیک‌تر شد و دوباره فریاد زد: "ازینجا برید!". بچه‌ها خیلی نگران شدند. بعضی از آنها شروع به گریه کردند. بچه‌ها می‌دانستند که یک انتخاب دارند: یا باید فرار کنند یا بایستند و در تاریکی با این فرد ترسناک مواجه شوند. بچه‌ها مسافت زیادی را طی کردند. روح تمام راه آنها را دنبال کرد.

سرانجام، بچه‌ها به خانه رسیدند. روح خیلی خوشحال بود. خیلی زود رودخانه بالا و بالاتر آمد. خیلی خطرناک بود. روح به بچه‌ها کمک کرده بود تا نجات پیدا کنند. او آنها را از (خطر) بالا آمدن آب نجات داده بود. همینطور از قدرت خود برای هدایت آنها به خانه استفاده کرد.

بعضی وقت‌ها ملاقات با یک روح فوایدی دارد. روح می‌تواند زندگی شما را نجات دهد!

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a ghost returns to help her community
 - b. How a wise pet helps children escape a ghost
 - c. Why an individual has a job in the north
 - d. How some children escaped bad weather
2. What caused fright in the children?
 - a. The power of the moon at night
 - b. The bad weather near the river
 - c. The voice of the ghost
 - d. Their dead pet
3. What was true of the children in the story?
 - a. Their home was a short distance from the river.
 - b. They had the advantage of being ghosts.
 - c. They didn't like to play near the river.
 - d. They were upset when they saw the ghost.
4. Why did the ghost scare the children?
 - a. She wanted to help them.
 - b. She had no other choice.
 - c. She was afraid of their pet.
 - d. She didn't want them to see her.
5. Where did the woman live?



v.

allow

[ə'laʊ]

اجازه دادن، پذیرفتن



❖ To allow something to happen means to let it happen.

➤ Having a ticket will allow you to enter the show.

➤ داشتن بلیط به شما اجازه ی ورود به نمایش را می دهد.

v.

announce

[ə'naʊns]

اعلام کردن، انتشار دادن



❖ To announce something is to make it known.

➤ He announced to everyone his new idea for the company.

➤ او به همه، ایده ی جدیدش برای شرکت را اعلام کرد.

prep.

beside

[bi'saɪd]

در کنار، کنار



❖ When someone or something is beside you, they are next to you.

➤ The two brothers stood beside each other.

➤ دو برادر در کنار هم ایستاده بودند.

n.

challenge

['tʃælɪndʒ]

چالش، رقابت



❖ A challenge is something difficult to complete.

➤ It was a challenge to climb to the top of the mountain.

➤ صعود به قله ی کوه، یک چالش بود.



v.

claim

[kleim]

ادعا کردن

- ❖ To claim means to say that something is true.
- He claimed to know why the country's laws were weak.
- او ادعا کرد که می داند چرا قوانین کشور ضعیف است.



prep.

condition

[kən'diʃn]

وضعیت، شرایط، اوضاع

- ❖ The condition of someone or something is the state that they are in.
- The patient's condition was very good.
- وضعیت بیمار بسیار خوب بود.



v.

contribute

[kən'tribju:t]

کمک کردن، اهدا کردن

- ❖ To contribute to something means to do something to make it successful.
- We decided to contribute money to the new hospital.
- ما تصمیم گرفتیم که به بیمارستان جدید کمک مالی کنیم.



n.

difference

['dɪfrəns]

تفاوت، اختلاف

- ❖ A difference is a way that something is not like other things.
- The biggest difference between the birds is the color of their feathers.
- بزرگترین تفاوت بین پرندگان، رنگ پرهای آنها است.



v.

divide

[di'vaɪd]

تقسیم کردن

- ❖ To divide something is to make it into smaller parts.
- We divided the pizza.

➤ پیتزا رو تقسیم کردیم.

n.

expert

['eks]

استاد، متخصص

- ❖ An expert is someone who is very good at doing something.
- The wizard was an expert at magic.

➤ جادوگر، استاد سحر و جادو بود.

adj.

famous

['feɪməs]

مشهور

- ❖ If someone or something is famous, they are known to many people.
- The Eiffel Tower in Paris is very famous.

➤ برج ایفل در پاریس بسیار مشهور است.

n.

force

[fɔ:rs]

نیرو

- ❖ force is a person's strength or power.
- He used all his force to try and open the door.

➤ او از همه نیروی خود استفاده کرد تا در را باز کند.





n.

harm

[hɑ:rm]

صدمه، آسیب



- ❖ harm is hurt or problems caused to someone or something.
- A hot iron can cause great harm if you are not careful.
- اگر مراقب نباشی، اتوی داغ می‌تواند صدمه بزرگی ایجاد کند.

v.

lay

[leɪ]

روی زمین گذاشتن، پهن کردن، دراز کشیدن



- ❖ To lay means to put or place in a horizontal or flat position.
- Don't lay your socks on the floor.

➤ جوراب را روی زمین نگذار.

n.

peace

[pi:s]

صلح



- ❖ peace is a time without war.
- A white dove is a symbol for peace.

➤ کبوتر سفید نماد صلح است.

n.

prince

[prɪns]

شاهزاده



- ❖ A prince is the son of a king.
- The prince and the princess were married.

➤ شاهزاده و شاهزاده خانم با هم ازدواج کردند.



v.

protect

[prə'tekt]

محافظت کردن

- ❖ To protect someone is to stop them from getting hurt.
- Firemen protect us from fires.

➤ آتش نشانان ما را از آتش سوزی محافظت می کنند.



v.

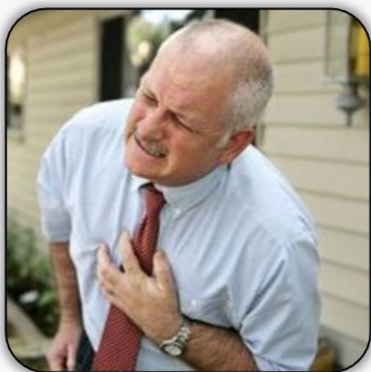
sense

[sens]

احساس کردن

- ❖ To sense something is to know about it without being told.
- I could sense that he was watching me.

➤ احساس می کردم که او مرا تماشا می کند.



adj.

sudden

['sʌdn]

ناگهانی، یکدفعه

- ❖ When something is sudden, it happens very quickly.
- He felt a sudden pain in his chest.

➤ او یک درد ناگهانی در سینه ی خود احساس کرد.



adv.

therefore

['ðerf]

بنابراین، از این رو

- ❖ therefore means for this reason.
- He is fat. therefore, he will go on a diet.

➤ او چاق است. بنابراین، رژیم خواهد گرفت.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- something difficult that you have to do
a. condition b. sense c. challenge d. divide
- the son of a king
a. prince b. expert c. famous d. force
- to do something to help succeed
a. contribute b. sudden c. harm d. peace
- for this reason
a. allow b. therefore c. announce d. beside
- to stop someone from getting hurt
a. claim b. protect c. lay d. difference

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- Sarah let Tim go to the game.
allo _____
- The child promised not to hurt our cat.
har __
- She was a well-known writer in our town.
fam _____
- You should say it's true that you never lie.
cl _____
- The food was cut into smaller parts so we could all eat.
d _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. It wasn't right for the coach _____.
___ a. to make the race such a challenge ___ b. to allow me to play
2. My sister and I were fighting. _____.
___ a. We announced the winners
___ b. My sister claimed she didn't like me
3. Everyone knew her _____.
___ a. because I stood beside her ___ b. because she was famous
4. The man would not buy the bike _____.
___ a. because of his difference ___ b. because of its bad condition
5. No one could win against Sally _____.
___ a. because she was an expert ___ b. because she never used force
6. We were scared because the dog _____.
___ a. might harm us ___ b. might bring us peace
7. The police wanted _____.
___ a. to protect us from danger ___ b. to not make any sense
8. You are too sick to play outside. _____.
___ a. Don't lay your feet on the table ___ b. Therefore, play inside
9. She was surprised by _____.
___ a. the expected amount contributed by the animals
___ b. the sudden noise outside
10. Please be fair _____.
___ a. when you meet the prince ___ b. when you divide the land

The Best Prince

King Minos was very sick. His **condition** was getting worse. He had three sons. He loved them all. He had to **announce** who would become king.

Two of the **princes** stood waiting outside the king's room. Theseus was the oldest and strongest. He thought his father would make him king. Pelias, the second son, thought differently. He was an **expert** with weapons. He thought the king would choose him.

"When I'm king," Theseus told Pelias, "I'll let you **contribute** to the defense of our country. You can lead the army."

Pelias became angry. "Father knows I'm **famous** for my sword skills. He'll make me king."

"You?" Theseus yelled. "He won't choose you!"

"The kingdom is mine!" Pelias **claimed**. "Father will give it to me—or I'll use **force** to take it!"

Theseus made a **sudden** move to take out his sword. Then Pelias did the same.

"Beating me will be a **challenge**," Theseus said. "Fight me now. The winner gets the kingdom!"

Pelias agreed.

King Minos could hear his sons fighting. The youngest son, Jason, stood **beside** him. He **sensed** his father's sadness. The king **laid** his hand flat on Jason's arm.

"Your brothers fight too much," the king told him. "I must **protect** my kingdom from all **harm**. They'll **divide** it between them. The people won't know what to do. There'll be war. I can't **allow** either of them to be king. **Therefore**, I'm making you king. Your kindness has always made you special. It's the **difference** between you and your brothers. You can bring **peace**. They can't."

Then the king died. Theseus and Pelias heard that their youngest brother was king. They were surprised. They realized that their fighting was wrong. It had kept them from saying goodbye to their father. They agreed to have Jason as their king. He was the best choice.





بهترین شاهزاده

پادشاه مینوس بسیار مریض بود. شرایط او بدتر و بدتر می‌شد. سه پسر داشت و عاشق هر سه بود. او باید اعلام می‌کرد که چه کسی شاه خواهد شد. دو تا از شاهزاده‌ها بیرون اتاق پادشاه منتظر ایستادند. تسوس بزرگ‌ترین و قوی‌ترین بود. فکر می‌کرد پدرش او را به عنوان پادشاه انتخاب می‌کند. پیلیاس، دومین پسر، نظر دیگری داشت. او در سلاح‌های جنگی متخصص بود. فکر می‌کرد پادشاه او را انتخاب خواهد کرد.

تسوس به پیلیاس گفت "وقتی پادشاه بشم، اجازه می‌دم که به دفاع از کشور خدمت کنی. می‌توانی رهبر ارتش بشی. پیلیاس عصبانی شد. پدر می‌داند من به خاطر مهارت شمشیر زنی خود معروف هستم. او من رو پادشاه خواهد کرد. تیسوس فریاد زد: "تو؟" تو را انتخاب نخواهد کرد.

پیلیاس ادعا کرد: "پادشاهی برای منه!" "پدر آن را به من خواهد داد- در غیر اینصورت برای گرفتنش از زور استفاده می‌کنم. تسوس سریعاً حرکتی برای درآوردن شمشیر زد. پیلیاس هم همینطور. تسوس گفت: "شکست دادن من یک چالش خواهد بود." "همین حالا با من بجنگ. برنده پادشاهی رو تصاحب می‌کنه" پیلیاس موافقت کرد.

پادشاه مینوس می‌شنید که پسرانش دعوا می‌کنند. جوان‌ترین پسرش، جیسون، کنار او ایستاد. ناراحتی پدرش را احساس کرد. پادشاه دست خود را را روی بازوی جیسون گذاشت. به او گفت: "برادرانت زیاد دعوا می‌کنند." من باید پادشاهی خود را در برابر هر آسیبی محافظت کنم. آنها پادشاهی من را تقسیم می‌کنند. مردم نخواهند دانست که چه کاری انجام بدهند. جنگ رخ می‌دهد. نمی‌توانم اجازه دهم هیچ کدام از آنها پادشاه بشود. بنابراین، تو را پادشاه خواهم کرد. مهربانی تو همیشه تو را خاص کرده است. این تفاوت بین تو و برادرانت است. تو می‌توانی صلح را برقرار کنی ولی آنها نه.

سپس پادشاه مرد. تسوس و پیلیاس شنیدند که برادر کوچکتر آنها پادشاه شده است و غافل‌گیر شدند. آنها متوجه شدند که جنگیدنشان اشتباه بود. این مانع خداحافظی آنها از پدرشان شد. آنها قبول کردند که جیسون پادشاه شود. او بهترین انتخاب بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A sudden fight between kings
 - b. A kind prince who got a kingdom
 - c. An expert sister and a famous king
 - d. The challenge to divide the kingdom
2. What did the king need to protect the kingdom from?
 - a. The fighting between the two princes
 - b. The harm caused by sudden fights
 - c. The differences between the three brothers
 - d. The poor condition of the king's army
3. What was probably true of Jason in the story?
 - a. He wanted to bring peace to the kingdom.
 - b. The challenge of being king was too much for him.
 - c. He wanted harm to come to his brothers.
 - d. He hoped to divide the kingdom.
4. What was the difference between Jason and his brothers?
 - a. He was an expert with weapons.
 - b. He was older and stronger.
 - c. He made more sense.
 - d. He had always been kind.

5. What did the king have to announce?



v.

accept

[ək'sept]

قبول کردن، پذیرفتن

- ❖ To accept something that is offered is to take it.
- I accepted the girl's very nice gift.

➤ هدیه ی خیلی خوب دختر رو قبول کردم.

v.

arrange

[ə'reɪndʒ]

مرتب کردن، ترتیب دادن

- ❖ To arrange things is to put them in the right place.
- Please arrange the bowling pins in order so we can play.
- لطفا پین های بولینگ را مرتب کنید تا بتوانیم بازی کنیم.

v.

attend

[ə'tend]

شرکت کردن، حضور داشتن

- ❖ To attend something is to go to it.
- My sister and I attend the same school.

➤ من و خواهرم در یک مدرسه حضور داریم.

v.

balance

['bæləns]

متعادل کردن، برابر کردن، حفظ تعادل کردن

- ❖ To balance something is to keep it from falling.
- We saw an elephant balance itself on a ball.

➤ ما دیدیم که یک فیل روی یک توپ تعادل خود را حفظ می‌کند.



n.

contrast

['kɑ:ntræst]

تفاوت، تضاد

- ❖ A contrast is the sharp difference between two things.
- The contrast between my parents is very noticeable.
- تفاوت بین پدر و مادرم، بسیار قابل توجه است.



v.

encourage

[ɪn]

تشویق کردن

- ❖ To encourage someone is to make them want to do something.
- My football coach will encourage us when we are losing.
- مربی فوتبال من، هنگام باختن ما را تشویق خواهد کرد.



adj.

familiar

[fə'miliər]

آشنا، خودمانی

- ❖ If someone or something is familiar to you, you know them well.
- The two friends were very familiar with each other.
- این دو دوست خیلی با هم خودمانی بودند.



v.

grab

[græb]

گرفتن، قاپیدن

- ❖ To grab is to take a hold of someone or something suddenly.
- I grabbed a pear from the tree.
- یک گلابی از درخت برداشتم (کندم).



v.

hang

[hæŋ]

آویختن، آویزان کردن، آویزان شدن

- ❖ To hang something is to keep it above the ground.
- I drew a picture of my family, and my mother hung it on the wall.
- من یک نقاشی از خانواده‌ام کشیدم و مادرم آن را روی دیوار آویخت.



adj.

huge

[hju:dʒ]

بسیار بزرگ، عظیم الجسه

- ❖ If something is huge, it is very big.
- At work, my father drives a huge truck.
- در محل کار، پدرم کامیون بزرگی را سوار می شود.



adj.

necessary

['nesə]

ضروری، لازم

- ❖ If something is necessary, you must do it.
- It is necessary to have a passport when you travel to a foreign country.
- هنگام مسافرت به یک کشور خارجی، داشتن گذرنامه ضروری است.



n.

pattern

['pæ]

الگو، مدل

- ❖ A pattern is a way in which something is done or organized.
- My pattern of brushing my teeth is the same as most people's.
- الگوی من برای مسواک زدن به دندان هایم، همانند بیشتر افراد است.



v.

propose

[prə]

پیشنهاد کردن، توصیه کردن

- ❖ To propose something is to say that it should be done.
- Santa Claus proposed that I try to be a good boy all year.
- بابانوئل پیشنهاد داد که من سعی کنم در تمام سال پسر خوبی باشم.



n.

purpose

['pɜ:rpəs]

هدف، نیت، قصد

- ❖ A purpose is the reason that you do something.
- The purpose of exercising is to get into shape.
- هدف از ورزش کردن، روی فرم آمدن بدن است.



v.

release

[ri'li:s]

رها کردن

- ❖ To release something is to stop holding it.
- She released the bird from her hands.
- پرنده را از دستش رها کرد.



v.

require

[ri'kwaɪə]

نیاز داشتن، لازم داشتن

- ❖ To require something is to say that it is necessary.
- We require teachers to have a university degree.
- ما به معلمان نیاز داریم که مدرک دانشگاهی داشته باشند.



adj.

single

[ˈsɪŋɡl]

تنها، تک، مجرد

❖ If something is single, then there is only one.

➤ I have a single key in my hand.

➤ من یک کلید تنها در دستم دارم.



n.

success

[səkˈses]

موفقیت، پیروزی

❖ success is doing something well that you choose to do.

➤ My daughter was a big success at school.

➤ دختر من در مدرسه بسیار موفق بود.



v.

tear

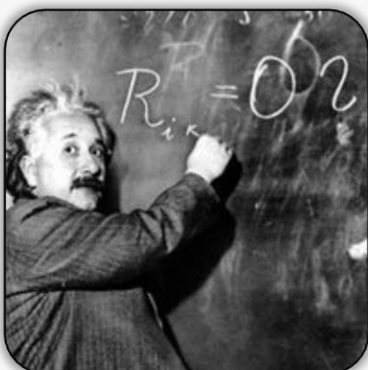
[ter]

پاره کردن

❖ To tear something means to pull it apart.

➤ It is easy to tear paper.

➤ پاره کردن کاغذ آسان است.



n.

theory

[ˈθiːəri]

تئوری، نظریه

❖ A theory is an idea about how something works.

➤ We talked about Einstein's theory of relativity in class.

➤ ما در مورد تئوری نسبیت انیشتین در کلاس صحبت کردیم.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. She looks like someone that I know well.
fami _____
2. Drinking water is something that she must do.
neces _____
3. He has an idea of how the machine works.
the _____
4. The reason that I am doing this is to help children.
pur _____
5. My teacher will make me want to get good grades.
enc _____
6. I agree with your idea. I think it will work.
ac _____
7. It is difficult to keep from falling when you stand on one foot.
ba _____
8. Her routine of exercising after work is common for many people.
pa _____
9. There is a big difference between day and night.
c _____
10. The Earth has a solitary moon.
s _____

Exercise 2

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- used when something must be done
a. propose b. hang c. require d. tear
- to stop something from falling down
a. balance b. arrange c. attend d. release
- a way that something is very different
a. grab b. success c. accept d. contrast
- an idea about something
a. theory b. familiar c. necessary d. encourage
- the only one
a. pattern b. single c. huge d. attend

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- It started to rain, _____.
___ a. it hung on the wall ___ b. so I grabbed my umbrella.
- When she heard I was leaving, _____.
___ a. she proposed a party ___ b. she had huge fun
- Don't pull on my shirt, or _____.
___ a. you might tear it ___ b. you might arrange it
- If you try hard, _____.
___ a. you can attend many things ___ b. you will have success
- When I catch fish, _____.
___ a. I usually release them back into the water
___ b. they require a good dinner

How the Sun and the Moon Were Made

Do you ever wonder where the moon and the sun came from? The Inuit people of Alaska have a **theory**.

They tell a story about a beautiful girl. She was very nice. In **contrast**, her brother was a mean little boy. One day he **proposed** something. "We should go to a party," he said. The girl **accepted**. First, it was **necessary** for her to prepare. She **arranged** her hair and put on nice clothes. This **required** a lot of time. But the girl worked hard, and soon she had **success**. She looked perfect.

They **attended** the party together. The girl was having fun. Later, she walked into the bathroom. Suddenly, the lights were turned off! Someone **grabbed** her hair and **tore** her clothes. She ran out of the bathroom. She wanted to know who did this to her.

Then she had an idea. She fixed her hair again. This time it was even more beautiful. She even **balanced** beautiful jewels in it. She wanted to **encourage** the person to grab it again. She put black dirt in her hair. The **purpose** of this was to catch the person.

She went to the bathroom again, and it was the same **pattern**. The lights went off, and someone grabbed her hair. When he **released** it, his hand was black. The girl returned to the party. She knew there was only a **single** person with a black hand. When she saw that person, he was very **familiar**. It was her brother!

He ran into the woods. The girl ran after him. They both carried fire so they could see in the dark. The smoke went into the air. As they ran, they grew. They became **huge**. Then they went into space. When the girl's fire went out, she **hung** in the sky. She became the moon, and her brother became the sun. They chase each other forever.





چگونه خورشید و ماه ساخته شدند

آیا تا کنون فکر کرده‌اید که خورشید و ماه از کجا آمده‌اند؟ مردم آلاسکا نظریه‌ای دارند. آنها داستان یک دختر زیبا را روایت می‌کنند. او خیلی مهربان بود. درمقابل، برادرش یک پسر بچه‌ی اخمو و شرور بود. یک روز او (برادرش) پیشنهادی داد. گفت: باید به یک مهمانی برویم. دختر قبول کرد. اول باید آماده می‌شد. موهایش را مرتب کرد و لباس‌های زیبایی پوشید. این کار زمان زیادی نیاز داشت. اما او تلاش زیادی کرد و موفق شد. عالی به نظر می‌رسید.

آن‌ها با هم در جشن شرکت کردند. به دختر خوش می‌گذشت. بعد، به دستشویی رفت. ناگهان، چراغ‌ها خاموش شدند! یکی موهایش را کشید و لباس‌های او را پاره کرد. از دستشویی بیرون پرید. می‌خواست بداند که چه کسی این کار را با او کرد. بعد ایده‌ای به ذهنش رسید. موهایش را دوباره مرتب (درست) کرد. این بار حتی زیباتر هم شد. حتی جواهرات زیبایی هم بر روی آن (موهایش) گذاشت. می‌خواست آن فرد را ترغیب کند تا دوباره آن را بکشد. او خاکی (کثیفی) سیاهی به موهایش زد. هدف از این کار گرفتن آن فرد بود.

دوباره به دستشویی رفت و بازهم همان اتفاق افتاد. چراغ‌ها خاموش شد، و شخصی موهایش را کشید.

وقتی رهایش کرد، دست هایش سیاه بود. دختر به جشن برگشت و او می‌دانست فقط یک نفر با دست‌های سیاه وجود دارد. زمانی که آن شخص را دید، خیلی برای او آشنا بود. او برادرش بود.

او به درون جنگل فرار کرد. دختر به دنبال او دوید. هر دوی آنها آتش حمل می‌کردند، بنابراین می‌توانستند در تاریکی ببینند. دود به هوا رفت. وقتی می‌دویدند رشد کردند. خیلی بزرگ شدند. بعد به فضا رفتند. وقتی آتش دختر خاموش شد، در آسمان معلق ماند. او تبدیل به ماه شد، و برادرش به خورشید تبدیل شد. آنها تا ابد یکدیگر را دنبال می‌کنند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. The contrast between the sun and the moon
 - b. A theory of how the moon and the sun were made
 - c. The purpose of the sun and the moon
 - d. Why it is necessary for the moon to balance in the sky
2. Why does the girl encourage someone to grab her hair?
 - a. She doesn't want him to tear her dress.
 - b. She wants to become huge and hang in the sky.
 - c. She wants to know who grabbed her hair.
 - d. She wants the party to be a success.
3. What was true of the boy in the story?
 - a. He accepted the invitation when his sister proposed a party.
 - b. He didn't want to attend the party.
 - c. He was the only person with a black hand.
 - d. He wore a shirt with a beautiful pattern.
4. Why does the girl become angry?
 - a. The boy doesn't release her hair.
 - b. She is required to arrange her hair.
 - c. The smoke from her fire went into the air.
 - d. She sees someone familiar with a black hand.
5. How does the girl get ready for the party?



prep.

against

[ə'genst]

برابر، در مقابل، بر علیه

- ❖ To be against something is to be touching it or opposed to it.
- They both leaned against the wall.

➤ هر دو به دیوار تکیه دادند.



n.

beach

[bi:tʃ]

ساحل

- ❖ The beach is a sandy or rocky place by the ocean.
- The little girl built a sandcastle on the beach.

➤ دخترک در ساحل یک قلعه شنی درست کرد.



v.

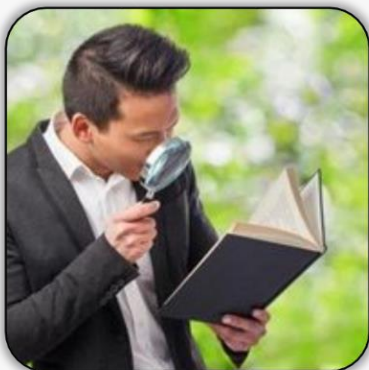
damage

['dæmɪdʒ]

آسیب زدن

- ❖ To damage something is to break it.
- The car was damaged in the accident.

➤ اتومبیل در حادثه خسارت دید.



v.

discover

[di'skʌvər]

پیدا کردن، کشف کردن (برای اولین بار)، متوجه شدن، دریافتن

- ❖ To discover something is to find it for the first time.
- I discovered some new information in this book!

➤ من یک سری اطلاعات جدید در این کتاب پیدا کردم.



n.

emotion

[i'moʊʃn]

احساس ، احساسات، هیجان

- ❖ An emotion is how you feel.
- Anger is a common emotion that we all feel.
- عصبانیت یک احساس مشترک است که همه ما حس می‌کنیم.



v.

fix

[fiks]

تعمیر کردن، درست کردن

- ❖ To fix something is to make it work.
- My dad has many tools to help him fix broken things.
- پدر من ابزارهای زیادی برای کمک به تعمیر چیزهای شکسته دارد.



adj.

frank

[fræŋk]

صریح، رُک، بی پرده

- ❖ If you are frank, you are being very honest.
- The teacher had a frank discussion with her students.
- معلم با دانش آموزانش بحث صریحی داشت.



v.

identify

[ai'dentɪfaɪ]

شناسایی کردن، شناختن، تشخیص هویت دادن

- ❖ To identify something is to be able to name it.
- I used the file to identify his name.
- من برای شناسایی نام او، از پرونده استفاده کردم.



n.

island

['aɪlənd]

جزیره



- ❖ An island is land in the middle of water.
- Japan is a group of islands.

➤ ژاپن گروهی از جزایر است.

n.

ocean

['oʊʃn]

اقیانوس



- ❖ The ocean is all of the salt water that surrounds land.
- The ocean can make powerful waves.

➤ اقیانوس می تواند امواج قدرتمندی را ایجاد کند.

adv.

perhaps

[pər'h]

شاید، احتمالاً



- ❖ perhaps is used when you say that something could happen.
- perhaps I will eat an apple for lunch.

➤ شاید برای ناهار یک سیب بخورم.

adj.

pleasant

['pleznt]

خوشایند، دلپذیر، مطبوع، خوب



- ❖ If something is pleasant, you enjoy it.
- The character had a pleasant look on its face.

➤ شخصیت (کاراکتر)، چهره خوشایندی داشت.



v.

prevent

[pri'vent]

مانع شدن، جلوگیری کردن، ممانعت کردن

- ❖ To prevent something is to stop it from happening.
- The handcuffs prevented me from moving my hands.
- دستبندها جلوی من را برای تکان دادن دست‌هایم گرفت.

n.

rock

[rɑ:k]

سنگ، تخته سنگ

- ❖ A rock is a hard thing in the dirt.
- I stacked rocks on top of one another.
- من سنگ‌ها را روی هم جمع کردم.

v.

save

[seiv]

نجات دادن

- ❖ To save something is to keep it from being hurt.
- I want to help save the world.
- من می‌خواهم به نجات جهان کمک کنم.

v.

step

[step]

قدم گذاشتن، قدم برداشتن، قدم زدن

- ❖ To step is to walk.
- Be careful where you step.
- مراقب جایی که قدم می‌گذارید، باشید.



adv.

still

[stɪl]

هنوز

- ❖ still is used when you say that a situation keeps going on.
- They are still waiting in line to get tickets.

➤ آنها هنوز در صف انتظار برای گرفتن بلیط هستند.



n.

taste

[teɪst]

طعم

- ❖ A taste is the flavor something makes in your mouth.
- The taste of the fruit was sweet.

➤ طعم میوه شیرین بود.



v.

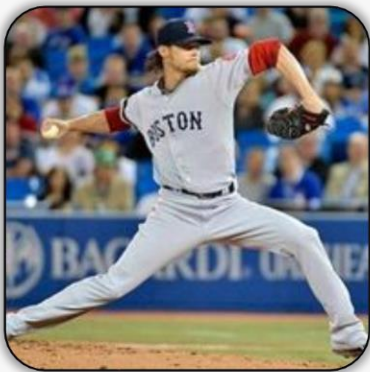
throw

[θrəʊ]

انداختن، پرتاب کردن

- ❖ To throw something is to use your hand to make it go through the air.
- The pitcher can throw the baseball very fast.

➤ پرتاب کننده ی توپ میتواند توپ بیسبال رو خیلی سریع پرتاب کند.



n.

wave

[weɪv]

موج

- ❖ A wave is a line of water that moves higher than the rest of the water.
- The water was filled with large blue waves.

➤ آب پر از امواج بزرگ آبی بود.



Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. wave
 - a. to pass from physical life
 - b. salt water that surrounds land
 - c. a raised line of water
 - d. land in the middle of water

2. taste
 - a. to hurt
 - b. to find
 - c. flavor
 - d. to walk

3. against
 - a. to be touching something
 - b. to stop from happening
 - c. maybe
 - d. enjoyable

4. rock
 - a. feelings
 - b. a place by the ocean
 - c. honest
 - d. a hard thing in the ground

5. throw
 - a. to name something
 - b. to put something into the air
 - c. to make something work
 - d. to stop something from being hurt

6. island
 - a. land
 - b. salt water
 - c. feelings
 - d. hard thing

7. discover
 - a. to be nice
 - b. to find something
 - c. to stop
 - d. to name

8. step
 - a. to keep from harm
 - b. to be next to
 - c. to walk
 - d. to hurt

9. beach
 - a. water that comes on land
 - b. a sandy or rocky place by the ocean
 - c. the flavor of something
 - d. something could happen

10. fix
 - a. to make something work
 - b. to pass from physical life
 - c. to be honest
 - d. to make something move in the air

Exercise 2

Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. to be touching something
a. beach b. against c. discover d. wave
2. to break something
a. identify b. maybe c. damage d. ocean
3. a way that you feel
a. prevent b. emotion c. rock d. pleasant
4. very honest
a. still b. step c. throw d. frank
5. land in the middle of water
a. save b. taste c. island d. fix

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. wave / beach
I like to play on the _____.
The big _____ pushed the swimmer back.
2. ocean / island
They walked across the _____ to find food.
I am scared of some animals that live in the _____.
3. fix / damage
My dad knows how to _____ cars.
If you _____ the light, we won't be able to see at night.
4. still / rock
We have to go around that large _____.
We are _____ planning to go to Florida this winter.
5. step / throw
Do you know how to _____ a football?
Please _____ into the house.

The Starfish

Last summer I took a trip to an **island**. I had a lot of fun. I sat and watched the **waves** and listened to the **ocean**. I learned to **identify** birds. I **discovered** pretty things and enjoyed the **taste** of new foods. It was a very nice time.

One evening I took a **pleasant** walk by the ocean. When the waves came in, many starfish* fell on the **beach**. Some starfish went back into the water, and they were safe. But other starfish were **still** on the sand. They would die if they did not get into the water. There were many starfish on the beach that night. It made me sad, but I knew I could not **fix** the problem. I **stepped** very carefully so I did not **damage** them.

Then I saw a little girl. She was also sad about the starfish. She wanted to **prevent** all of them from dying. She asked me if I could **perhaps** help her.

“To be **frank**, I don’t think we can do anything,” I said.

The little girl started to cry. She sat back **against** a **rock** and thought for a while. Finally, the **emotion** was gone. She stopped crying and stood up. Then she picked up a starfish and **threw** it into the water.

“What are you doing?” I asked her. But she did not answer me. She just threw as many starfish as she could. “You cannot **save** all of them!” I said.

She stopped to look at me. “No, I cannot save them all,” she replied. Then she picked up a very big starfish and said, “But I can save this one.” And then she smiled and threw the starfish as far as she could into the ocean.

*starfish – an animal shaped like a star that lives in the water





ستاره دریایی

تابستان سال پیش، به یک جزیره سفر کردم. نشستم و به امواج نگاه کردم و به اقیانوس گوش دادم. یادگرفتم که پرنده‌ها را بشناسم. چیزهای زیبایی را کشف کردم و از مزه‌ی غذاهای جدید لذت بردم. خیلی خوش گذشت.

یک روز عصر به یک پیاده‌روی لذت بخش در کنار اقیانوس رفتم. وقتی موج‌ها آمدند ستاره‌های دریایی زیادی روی ساحل افتادند. بعضی از ستاره‌های دریایی به آب برگشتند، و آنها ایمن و در امان بودند. اما ستاره‌های دریایی دیگر کماکان روی ماسه‌ها بودند. اگر وارد آب نمی‌شدند، می‌مردند. آن شب ستاره‌های دریایی بسیاری در ساحل بودند. ناراحتم کرد، اما می‌دانستم که نمی‌توانم مشکل را حل کنم. خیلی با احتیاط و آرام گام برمی‌داشتم تا به آنها صدمه نزنم.

سپس دختر کوچکی را دیدم. او هم بابت ستاره‌ی دریایی ناراحت بود. می‌خواست تا از مردن همه‌ی آنها جلوگیری کند. از من خواست که آیا می‌توانم به او کمک کنم. گفتم: رک بگم، فکر نکنم بتونیم کاری انجام بدیم.

دختر کوچولو شروع به گریه کرد. او به صخره‌ای تکیه داد و برای مدتی فکر کرد. در نهایت احساساتش از بین رفت. دست از گریه کشید و وایساد. بعد یک ستاره دریایی را برداشت و آن را داخل آب انداخت.

ازش پرسیدم: "چیکار داری می‌کنی؟" اما او به من جواب نداد. هرچقدر که می‌توانست ستاره‌ی دریایی به آب انداخت. گفتم: "نمیتونی همشونو نجات بدی!"

ایستاد تا به من نگاه کند. پاسخ داد: نه، نمی‌تونم همشونو نجات بدم. بعد ستاره دریایی بسیار بزرگی را برداشت و گفت: اما می‌تونم این یکی رو نجات بدم. سپس لبخند زد و ستاره دریایی را تا جایی که می‌توانست به داخل اقیانوس پرتاب کرد.

* ستاره‌ی دریایی: حیوانی است به شکل ستاره که در آب زندگی می‌کند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A girl who wants to save starfish
 - b. How to throw starfish
 - c. A girl who is too frank
 - d. Birds and animals at the ocean
2. What causes the little girl's emotion?
 - a. She cannot fix the damage she finds to homes.
 - b. She cannot prevent starfish from dying in the sand.
 - c. She discovers starfish in the water.
 - d. She steps on a rock and hurts her foot.
3. What does the man think is NOT good about the island?
 - a. Watching the waves
 - b. Identifying birds
 - c. The starfish dying on the sand
 - d. Tasting new food
4. What does the girl think the man can perhaps do?
 - a. Identify birds
 - b. Take a walk on the beach
 - c. Discover something pretty
 - d. Help her save starfish

5. Which starfish were safe on the beach?



n.

benefit

[ˈbenɪfɪt]

سود، مزیت، منفعت

- ❖ A benefit is a good thing.
- Being able to fly is a good benefit to birds.

➤ توانایی پرواز، مزیت خوبی برای پرندگان است.



adj.

certain

[ˈsɜːrtɪn]

مطمئن

- ❖ If you are certain about something, you know it is true.
- I am certain that zebras have stripes.

➤ من مطمئن هستم که گورخرها خطوط راه راه دارند.



n.

chance

[tʃæns]

فرصت، شانس

- ❖ A chance is an opportunity to do something.
- I had a chance to see the Roman Coliseum last summer.

➤ من در تابستان گذشته فرصتی برای دیدن چند تا استادیوم رومی داشتم.



n.

effect

[ɪˈfekt]

تأثیر، اثر، نتیجه

- ❖ An effect is a change made by something else.
- The medicine had a good effect on the boy.

➤ دارو تاثیر خوبی روی آن پسر گذاشت.



adj.

essential

[i'senʃl]

ضروری، لازم

❖ If something is essential, it is very important and necessary.

➤ It is essential to have oxygen when you scuba dive.

➤ وقتی غواصی می‌کنید، داشتن اکسیژن ضروری است.



adj.

far

[fɑ:r]

دور

❖ If something is far, it is not close.

➤ It's far going from the east coast to the west coast of America.

➤ فاصله ی بین ساحل شرقی و ساحل غربی آمریکا دور است.



v.

focus

['fouʃ]

تمرکز داشتن، تمرکز کردن

❖ To focus on something is to think about it and pay attention to it.

➤ My mom always helps me to focus on my school work.

➤ مادرم همیشه به من کمک می‌کند تا روی کار مدرسه‌ام تمرکز کنم.



n.

function

['fʌŋkʃn]

عملکرد، کارکرد

❖ The function of something is what it does.

➤ The function of a flashlight is to help you see in the dark.

➤ نقش چراغ قوه این است که به دید شما در تاریکی کمک کند.





n.

grass

[græs]

چمن، علف

- ❖ grass is the green leaves that cover the ground.
- The grass looked so soft and green.

➤ چمن، بسیار نرم و سبز به نظر می‌رسید.



v.

guard

[ga:rd]

حفظ کردن، نگهبانی کردن

- ❖ To guard something is to take care of it.
- The police officer will guard us from any harm.

➤ افسر پلیس ما را از هرگونه صدمه‌ای حفظ خواهد کرد.



n.

image

['imɪdʒ]

تصویر

- ❖ The image of something is a picture of it.
- The image of her eye was very clear.

➤ تصویر چشم او کاملاً واضح بود.



adj.

immediate

[i'mi:diət]

فوری، بی‌درنگ

- ❖ If something is immediate, it happens quickly.
- An immediate response came from the pizza place.

➤ پاسخی فوری از پیتزا فروشی رسید.





adj.

primary

[ˈpraɪ]

اصلی، اولیه

- ❖ If something is primary, it is the most important thing.
- His primary thoughts are about money.

➤ افکار اصلی او درباره پول است.

adj.

proud

[praʊd]

سربلند، مفتخر، سرفراز



- ❖ If someone feels proud, they are happy about what they have done.
- She is proud of the picture she drew of her house.

➤ او به خاطر تصویری که از خانه‌اش ترسیم کرده، احساس غرور می‌کند.

v.

remain

[riˈmeɪn]

ماندن، باقی ماندن



- ❖ To remain somewhere is to stay there.
- My sister had to remain home since she was sick.

➤ خواهرم از آنجا که بیمار بود مجبور شد در خانه بماند.

v.

rest

[rest]

استراحت کردن



- ❖ To rest is to stop being active while the body gets back its strength.
- I rested on the couch after work.

➤ بعد از کار روی مبل استراحت کردم.



adj.

separate

[ˈseprət]

مجزا، جداگانه

- ❖ If two things are separate, they are not together.
- New York and Los Angeles are in two separate parts of America.
- نیویورک و لس آنجلس در دو بخش جداگانه ی آمریکا قرار دارند.

n.

site

[saɪt]

محل، مکان، موقعیت



- ❖ A site is a place.
- We found the perfect site for our picnic.
- ما یک جای عالی برای پیکنیک خود پیدا کردیم.

n.

tail

[teɪl]

دم



- ❖ A tail is a part of an animal's body, sticking out from its rear or back.
- Our dog wags its tail when it's happy.
- سگ ما وقتی خوشحال است دم خود را تکان می‌دهد.

n.

trouble

[ˈtrʌbl]

دردسر، مشکل



- ❖ trouble is a problem or a difficulty.
- I have trouble working with my boss.
- من در کار با رئیس خود مشکل دارم.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. It is very important that you call your mother soon.
essen _____
2. The good thing about being old is that you know many things.
bene _____
3. I have problems with my science homework.
tro _____
4. I am sure that she will come to his party.
cer _____
5. The job of the stove is to cook.
fun _____
6. That is the place where they met.
si _____
7. I saw his picture on TV.
i _____
8. The twins don't like to be apart.
s _____
9. I like to stay at home on the weekends.
r _____
10. His part that comes out of his rear was shaking because he was happy.
t _____

Exercise 2

Part A Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. effect / benefit

The _____ of the rain was slippery roads.

The _____ of waking up early is being at work on time.

2. primary / immediate

She had to make a(an) _____ phone call.

The _____ cause of my problems is laziness.

3. rested / proud

He was _____ when he got the best score.

We _____ under the shade of a tree.

4. far / separate

Her new school is _____ from here.

She and her best friend hate to be in _____ classrooms.

5. guard / remain

I have to _____ my money from my little brother.

I have to _____ in school for four more years.

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. Every year for my birthday, _____.

___ a. I return to the site of my birth ___ b. my cat has a short tail

2. I believe her _____.

___ a. because she has a chance to lie ___ b. because she's certain of the facts

3. My new watch is great. _____.

___ a. It has many functions ___ b. It causes me trouble

4. I was afraid _____.

___ a. because I thought of a scary image of a snake

___ b. because I didn't focus on my work

5. I eat many fruits _____.

___ a. because they are essential for good health

___ b. because they taste like grass

The First Peacock

Argos lived in Ancient Greece. He was a husband and a **proud** father. He worked hard and did well at his job. But one thing about him wasn't normal. He was born with 100 eyes. Having many eyes was usually a **benefit** to him. He had a **chance** to see many things.

Also, since he had so many eyes, he was very good at **guarding** things. While sleeping, he only **rested** a few eyes at a time. The others stayed awake. He worked for Hera, a great goddess. His **primary function** was to guard a special cow. The cow was very important to Hera. It was her favorite pet. The most **essential** part of his job was to keep the cow alone. It had to be kept **separate** from all the other cows and **far** away from people.

This was an easy job for Argos. The cow just ate **grass** all day. But the god Zeus wanted the cow. He wanted to take it away from Hera. He had a plan. He found a great music player. He asked the man to play a beautiful song for Argos. Zeus was **certain** Argos would go to sleep.

The song had an **immediate effect**. Argos couldn't **focus** on his job. He fell asleep. Zeus saw this, and he took the cow.

Hera was very angry with Argos. She turned him into a peacock. She put his many eyes on his **tail**. Argos was very sad.

Zeus saw how much **trouble** he had caused Argos. He made another plan. He turned Argos into a group of stars. He wanted Argos to **remain** in the sky forever. Even today, Argos' **image** remains there, above the **site** where all his problems began. We can still see him in the night sky.





اولین طاووس

آرگوس در یونان باستان زندگی می‌کرد. او همسر و پدری سربلند و شرافتمند بود. سخت‌کوش بود و کارش را به خوبی انجام می‌داد. اما در یک مورد عادی نبود. با صد چشم به دنیا آمده بود. داشتن این تعداد چشم معمولاً مزیتی برای او به شمار می‌آمد. از این شانس برخوردار بود که چیزهای زیادی را ببیند.

همینطور، از آنجایی که چشمان زیادی داشت، در نگهبانی از چیزهای مختلف خیلی خوب عمل می‌کرد. هنگام خوابیدن، تنها چند چشم را به طور همزمان می‌بست. بقیه بیدار می‌ماندند. او برای هرا، یک الهه‌ی بزرگ، کار می‌کرد. کار اصلی او نگهبانی از گاوی مخصوص بود. گاو برای هرا بسیار مهم بود. حیوان خانگی مورد علاقه‌ی او بود. ضروری‌ترین و مهم‌ترین بخش شغل او تنها نگه داشتن گاو بود.

او باید از بقیه گاوها و به دور از مردم نگه داشته می‌شد. این کار ساده‌ای برای آرگوس بود. گاو تمام روز فقط علف می‌خورد. ولی خدای زئوس گاو را می‌خواست. می‌خواست او را از چنگ هرا در بیاورد. نقشه‌ای داشت. یک نوازنده‌ی عالی پیدا کرد. از مرد خواست که آهنگی زیبا برای آرگوس بنوازد. زئوس مطمئن بود که آرگوس به خواب می‌رود.

آهنگ تأثیر فوری داشت. آرگوس نتوانست بر روی کارش تمرکز کند. به خواب رفت. زئوس این را دید، و گاو را برد. هرا ازدست آرگوس خیلی عصبانی بود. او را به یک طاووس تبدیل کرد. چشمان زیاد او را در دمش قرار داد. آرگوس خیلی ناراحت بود.

زئوس دید که چقدر دردسر برای آرگوس ایجاد کرده است. نقشه‌ی دیگری کشید. آرگوس را به گروهی از ستارگان تبدیل کرد. می‌خواست برای همیشه در آسمان بماند. حتی امروز هم تصویر آرگوس در آنجا باقی مانده است، بالای مکانی که تمامی مشکلاتش شروع شدند. هنوز هم می‌توانیم او را در آسمان شب ببینیم.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why it is essential to guard cows
 - b. How to play beautiful music
 - c. How the image of a peacock in the sky came about
 - d. How being born with 100 eyes benefited a man
2. Why was guarding Hera's cow easy for Argos?
 - a. All it did was eat grass all day.
 - b. It was kept separate from all the other cows.
 - c. He had a chance to listen to music.
 - d. He was able to sleep instead of focusing on it.
3. Why did Zeus turn Argos into a group of stars?
 - a. He wanted Argos to see the site of his trouble.
 - b. He was certain that Argos would fall asleep.
 - c. He wanted to make Argos remain in the sky forever.
 - d. He wanted to cause Argos immediate trouble.
4. What was the primary function of Argos' job?
 - a. To make sure the cow was never sad
 - b. To keep the cow far away from people
 - c. To see the effects of music on the cow
 - d. Work for a proud goddess named Hera
5. How did Argos sleep?



adv.

anymore

[,enē'môr]

دیگر

❖ anymore means any longer.

➤ Her old pants don't fit her anymore.

➤ شلوار قدیمی او دیگر اندازه اش نیست.



adj.

asleep

[ə'sli:p]

خوابیده، خواب

❖ When a person is asleep, they are not awake.

➤ The baby has been asleep for hours.

➤ کودک ساعت ها هست که خوابیده.



n.

berry

['beri]

توت، تمشک، میوه توت مانند

❖ A berry is a small round fruit that grows on certain plants and trees.

➤ The berry looked delicious.

➤ توت خوشمزه به نظر می رسید.



v.

collect

[kə'lekt]

جمع کردن، گرد آوردن

❖ To collect things is to group them together all in one place.

➤ I collected shells when I was younger.

➤ من در جوانی (پوسته) صدف جمع کردم.





v.

compete

[kəm'pi:t]

رقابت کردن

- ❖ To compete is to try to be better than someone.
- He will compete with very good athletes.

➤ او با ورزشکاران بسیار خوبی رقابت خواهد کرد.



n.

conversation

[kɑ:nvər's]

مکالمه، گفتگو

- ❖ A conversation is a talk between people.
- There were two conversations going on at once.

➤ دو مکالمه به طور همزمان در جریان بود.



n.

creature

['kri:tʃər]

موجود زنده موجود، جانور

- ❖ A creature is any living thing.
- The creature we saw today was either a dolphin or a porpoise.

➤ آن موجودی که امروز دیدیم یا یک دلفین بود یا یک گرازدریایی.



n.

decision

[dɪ'sɪʒn]

تصمیم

- ❖ A decision is a choice.
- He made the wrong decision.

➤ او تصمیم اشتباهی گرفت.



conj.

either

[ˈiːðər]

یا این ... یا آن

- ❖ either is used with "or" to say there are two or more possibilities.
- You can choose to be either white or black when you play chess.
- هنگام بازی شطرنج، می‌توانید انتخاب کنید که یا سفید و یا سیاه باشید.



n.

forest

[ˈfɔːr]

جنگل

- ❖ A forest is a place with lots of trees and animals.
- I love to go walking in the forest.
- من عاشق راه رفتن در جنگل هستم.



n.

ground

[graʊnd]

زمین، خاک

- ❖ The ground is the top part of the Earth that we walk on.
- The ground under our feet was dry and brown.
- زمین زیر پاهایمان خشک و قهوه ای بود.



v.

introduce

[ˌɪntrəˈdʊːs]

معرفی کردن

- ❖ To introduce someone or something is to say who they are.
- I introduced myself to our newest co-worker today.
- امروز خودم را با جدیدترین همکاران معرفی کردم.



v.

marry

[ˈmæri]

ازدواج کردن

- ❖ To marry is to legally become husband and wife.
- Rose and Henry were married, and they lived happily.
- رز و هنری ازدواج کردند و با خوشحالی زندگی کردند.

v.

prepare

[prɪ]

آماده کردن

- ❖ To prepare is to get ready for something.
- I prepared my speech to the class.
- من سخنرانی خودم را برای کلاس آماده کردم.

v.

sail

[seɪl]

قایقرانی کردن

- ❖ To sail is to move a boat on the water.
- I love to sail my boat on the lake.
- من دوست دارم قایقم را به سمت دریاچه حرکت بدهم.

adj.

serious

[ˈsɪrɪ]

جدی، وخیم، مهم، سنگین

- ❖ When something is serious, it is bad or unsafe.
- The accident was very serious.
- تصادف بسیار جدی بود.



v.

spend

[spend]

صرف کردن، خرج کردن، گذراندن

❖ To spend is to use time doing something or being somewhere.

➤ I like to spend my free time fishing.

➤ دوست دارم وقت آزادم را صرف ماهیگیری کنم.



adj.

strange

[streɪndʒ]

عجیب

❖ When something is strange, it is not normal.

➤ Joe had a strange look on his face after he saw what happened.

➤ جو بعد از اینکه دید چه اتفاقی افتاده، حالت عجیبی روی صورتش پدیدار شد.



n.

truth

[tru:θ]

حقیقت

❖ The truth is a fact or something that is right.

➤ He was telling the truth about seeing a large green snake.

➤ او داشت حقیقت را درباره دیدن یک مار بزرگ سبز می‌گفت.



v.

wake

[weɪk]

از خواب بلند شدن

❖ To wake is to not be sleeping anymore.

➤ He is always full of energy when he wakes in the morning.

➤ وقتی صبح از خواب بیدار می‌شود، همیشه پر از انرژی است.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to marry
a. collect b. wed c. prepare d. introduce
- a living thing
a. conversation b. truth c. creature d. decision
- to move a boat across the water
a. spend b. berry c. forest d. sail
- one thing or the other
a. asleep b. compete c. either d. serious
- any longer
a. ground b. strange c. wake d. anymore

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The doll broke when it fell onto the floor.
gr _____
- I like to use my time taking long walks in the forest.
sp _____ time
- He loved to travel in his boat to many islands.
sa _____
- I stop sleeping when the dog barks.
w _____
- The area was full of trees and plants.
f _____

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

compete

decision

collect

strange

prepare

serious

truth

asleep

introduce

conversation

1. To _____ for the test, I had to study a long time.
2. Playing with a knife can lead to _____ injury.
3. It's _____ for her to be mean; usually she is very kind.
4. Michael's parents and teacher had a _____ about his grades.
5. I _____ books, and now I have over 500 of them.
6. She did not know my name, so I had to _____ myself.
7. I had to make a _____ about which book I wanted to buy.
8. He lies a lot, but I hope he is telling the _____.
9. Many countries _____ in the Olympics every four years.
10. He was so tired that he fell _____ right away.

Princess Rose and the Creature

There was once a beautiful princess named Rose. Her mother, the queen, however, was not as beautiful as the princess. The queen felt bad that she was not the most beautiful woman in the kingdom **anymore**. She was tired of **competing** with her daughter. She made a **decision**. She **prepared** a drink for the princess. After the princess drank it, she fell **asleep**. Then the queen took the princess to the **forest**. She left the princess there. It was a very **serious** thing to do. **“Either** she will be killed by animals or she will get lost in the forest,” the queen thought.

The princess had a dream. She dreamed about a man with brown hair and brown eyes. It was the man she would wed.

The princess **woke** up. She saw a **strange creature** on the **ground**. It looked like a man, but he was hairy and green. He had horns on his head and a pig’s nose.

The creature said, “Did I scare you? I hope not. Let me **introduce** myself. I am Henry.”

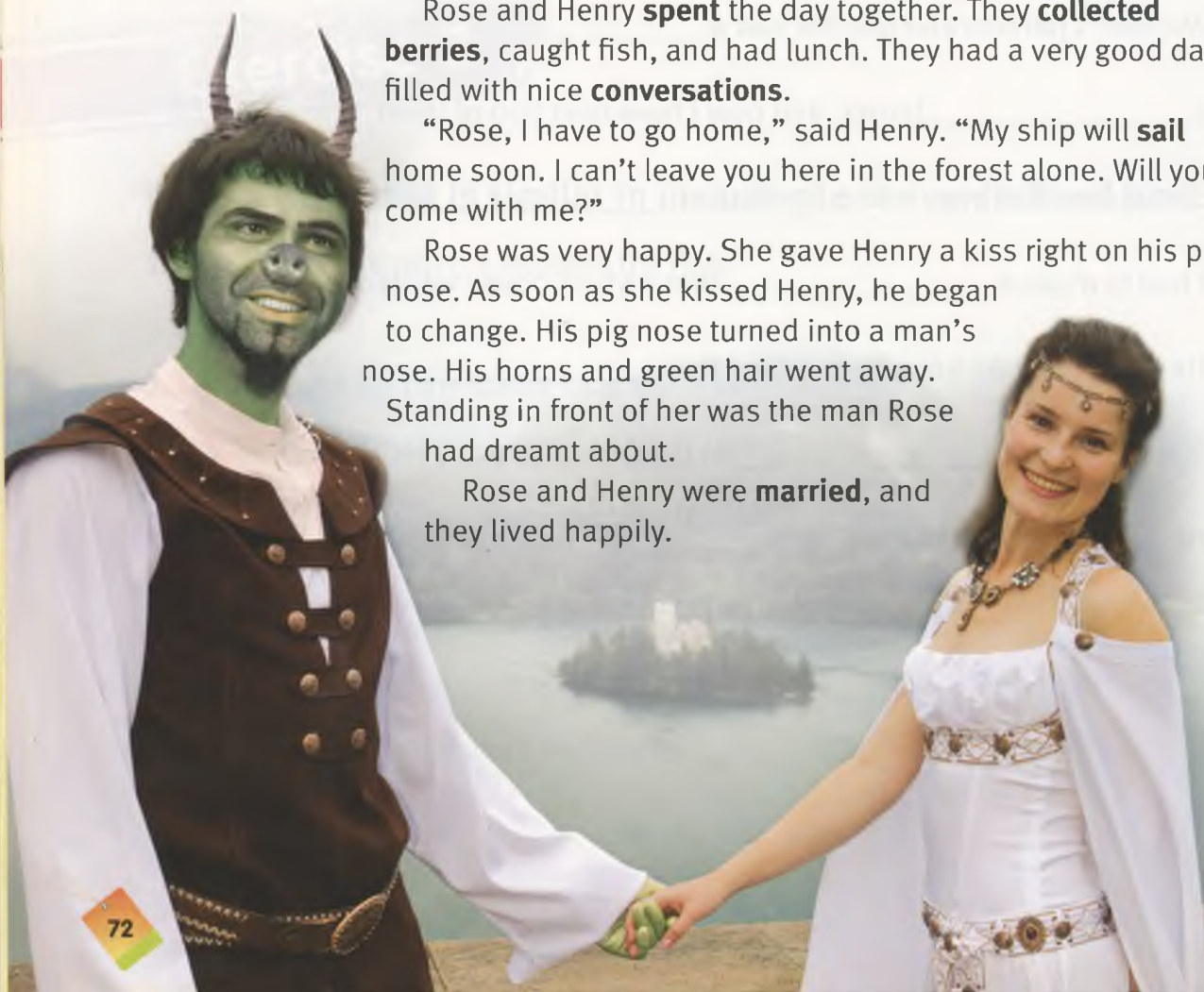
“I am not scared. To tell you the **truth**, I think you are cute,” said Rose.

Rose and Henry **spent** the day together. They **collected berries**, caught fish, and had lunch. They had a very good day filled with nice **conversations**.

“Rose, I have to go home,” said Henry. “My ship will **sail** home soon. I can’t leave you here in the forest alone. Will you come with me?”

Rose was very happy. She gave Henry a kiss right on his pig nose. As soon as she kissed Henry, he began to change. His pig nose turned into a man’s nose. His horns and green hair went away. Standing in front of her was the man Rose had dreamt about.

Rose and Henry were **married**, and they lived happily.





پرنسس رُز و موجود عجیب

زمانی پرنسس زیبایی به نام رُز بود. اما، مادر او، ملکه، به اندازه پرنسس زیبا نبود. ملکه از این که دیگر زیباترین زن در سراسر پادشاهی نبود احساس بدی داشت. او از رقابت با دختر خود خسته شده بود. تصمیمی گرفت. یک نوشیدنی برای پرنسس آماده کرد. پس از نوشیدن آن، شاهدخت به خواب فرو رفت. سپس ملکه پرنسس را به جنگل برد. او را در آنجا رها کرد. انجام دادن این کار بسیار جدی (خطرناک) بود.

ملکه فکر کرد "یا حیوانات اون رو می‌کشن یا تو جنگل گم می‌شه". پرنسس خوابی دید. او خواب یک مرد با موها و چشم‌های قهوه‌ای را دید. مردی بود که با او ازدواج می‌کرد. پرنسس بیدار شد. موجودی عجیب روی زمین دید. شبیه به یک مرد بود، اما پشمالو و سبز بود. روی سرش شاخ و یک بینی خوک داشت.

موجود گفت: "ترسوندمت؟ امیدوارم که اینطور نباشه. اجازه بدید خودم را معرفی کنم. من هنری هستم."

رز گفت "نترسیدم، راستشو بخوای، من فکر می‌کنم تو خیلی ناز هستی"

رز و هنری روز را با هم سپری کردند. توت جمع کردند، ماهی گرفتند، و ناهار خوردند. روز خیلی خوبی داشتند پر از گفتگوهای خوب و جالب.

هنری گفت: "رز من باید برم خونه، کشتی‌ام به زودی به سمت خونه حرکت می‌کنه. نمی‌تونم تو رو اینجا تنها رها کنم، با من میایی؟"

رُز خیلی خوشحال بود. بوسه‌ای دقیقا روی بینی خوک مانند هنری زد. به محض اینکه هنری را بوسید، او شروع به تغییر کرد. دماغ خوکی او به دماغ یک مرد تغییر کرد. شاخ‌ها و موهای سبزش ناپدید شدند. کسی که در مقابل او ایستاده بود مردی بود که رُز در رویا دیده بود.

رز و هنری با همدیگر ازدواج کردند و با خوشبختی به زندگی خود ادامه دادند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A strange creature that competes with a princess
 - b. Why a queen had a conversation with a princess
 - c. How a princess met a creature in a forest
 - d. A serious decision made by a princess
2. Which of the following is NOT true in the story?
 - a. The queen fell asleep in the forest.
 - b. The princess had a dream.
 - c. The creature wasn't mean or scary.
 - d. Henry said he was going to sail away on a ship.
3. What did the queen want to happen to the princess?
 - a. A creature would wake the princess.
 - b. A creature would prepare a drink for the princess.
 - c. An animal would kill the princess if she was left on the ground.
 - d. Rose and a creature would collect either berries or fruits.
4. Which of the following is true at the end of the story?
 - a. Rose introduces Henry to the queen.
 - b. Rose and Henry wed.
 - c. The queen learns the truth about Rose.
 - d. The queen sails away on a ship.
5. What did the princess dream in the forest?



adj.

alone

[ə'ləʊn]

تنها

❖ If someone is alone, they are not with another person.

➤ The boy wanted to be alone to think.

➤ پسر می‌خواست تنها باشد تا فکر کند.



n.

apartment

[ə'pɑ:rt]

آپارتمان

❖ An apartment is a set of rooms in a building where people live.

➤ She has a nice apartment in the city.

➤ او یک آپارتمان قشنگ در شهر دارد.



n.

article

['ɑ:rt]

مقاله

❖ An article is a story in a newspaper or magazine.

➤ Did you read the article in the newspaper about the soccer game?

➤ آیا شما آن مقاله را در روزنامه درباره بازی فوتبال خوانده‌اید؟



n.

artist

['ɑ:rt]

هنرمند

❖ An artist is a person who paints, draws, or makes sculptures.

➤ He went to Paris to become an artist.

➤ او به پاریس رفت تا هنرمند شود.



n.

attitude

['ætɪtʊ:d]

نگرش، روش و رفتار، طرز برخورد

- ❖ Someone's attitude is the way they feel and think.
- John has a bad attitude. He's always angry.

➤ جان رفتاری بد دارد. او همیشه عصبانی است.



v.

compare

[kəm]

مقایسه کردن

- ❖ To compare means to say how two things are the same and different.
- If you compare cats and dogs, you'll see that they're both good pets.

➤ اگر گربه‌ها و سگ‌ها را مقایسه کنید، خواهید دید که هر دو حیوانات خانگی خوبی هستند.



v.

judge

[dʒʌdʒ]

قضاوت کردن، داوری کردن

- ❖ To judge something is to say if it is good or bad.
- The boy was going to judge how his mother's turkey tasted.

➤ پسر داشت مزه ی بوقلمون مادرش را قضاوت کند.



n.

magazine

['mæɡəzɪ:n]

مجله

- ❖ A magazine is a regular publication with news, stories, and articles.
- She likes to read fashion magazines.

➤ او دوست دارد تا مجله‌های مد را بخواند.



n.

material

[mə]

مواد، جنس، جسم



- ❖ A material is what is used to make something.
- Brick is a good material for building houses.

➤ آجر ماده خوبی برای ساخت خانه است.

n.

meal

[mi:l]

وعده ی غذایی



- ❖ A meal is a time when food is eaten like breakfast, lunch, or dinner.
- Breakfast is my favorite meal because I enjoy breakfast foods.

➤ صبحانه وعده غذایی مورد علاقه من است زیرا از غذاهای صبحانه لذت می برم.

n.

method

['meθəd]

روش



- ❖ A method is the way to do something.
- One method to remember things is to tie a string around your finger.

➤ یک روش برای به یاد آوردن چیزها، گره زدن یک نخ دور انگشت است.

n.

neighbor

['neɪbər]

همسایه



- ❖ A neighbor is a person who lives near you.
- I like my neighbor because he's very friendly.

➤ از همسایه ام خوشم می آید چون او خیلی دوست داشتنی است.



adj.

professional

[prə'feʃənəl]

حرفه ای

- ❖ If something is professional, it deals with work that uses special skills.
- If you want to be a pilot, you must have professional training.
- اگر می‌خواهید خلبان باشید، باید آموزش حرفه‌ای ببینید.

n.

profit

['prɑ:fɪt]

سود



- ❖ A profit is the extra money you make when you sell something.
- I made a small profit from selling my old clothes.
- من از فروش لباس‌های قدیمی ام سود کمی بردم.

n.

quality

['kwɑ:lɪ]

کیفیت



- ❖ The quality of something is how good it is.
- The quality of his car is very good.
- کیفیت ماشین او بسیار خوب است.

n.

shape

[ʃeɪp]

شکل



- ❖ A shape is a simple form like a square or circle.
- The triangle is my favorite shape.
- مثلث شکل مورد علاقه من است.



n.

space

[speɪs]

جا، فضا



❖ A space is an empty area.

➤ I don't have much space for things in my small house.
➤ من در خانه کوچکم جای زیادی برای اسباب ندارم.

n.

stair

[steə]

پله



❖ stairs are the things that are used to go up in a building.

➤ You can take the stairs to the second floor.

➤ شما می‌توانید از پله‌ها به طبقه دوم بروید.

n.

symbol

['sɪmbəl]

سمبل، نماد، علامت



❖ A symbol is a thing that stands for something else.

➤ This symbol tells us that we cannot smoke in this area.

➤ این نماد به ما می‌گوید که نمی‌توانیم در این منطقه سیگار بکشیم.

adj.

thin

[θɪn]

لاغر



❖ If someone or something is thin, they are not fat.

➤ The man was thin because he didn't eat much.

➤ مرد لاغر بود، چون زیاد غذا نمی‌خورد.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a person who paints, draws, or sculpts
a. magazine b. article c. artist d. alone
2. to decide that something is good or bad
a. neighbor b. judge c. meal d. compare
3. a way of doing something
a. method b. profit c. professional d. attitude
4. how good something is
a. apartment b. thin c. quality d. stairs
5. something used to make other things
a. shape b. symbol c. material d. space

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I don't like the person who lives near me.
neigh _____
2. I read a regular publication about sports.
maga _____
3. The doctor gave his expert and qualified advice.
profe _____
4. He looked at the differences between two books.
co _____
5. She has a good way of thinking about things.
a _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the **bolded** word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. When you are **alone**, you are with another person.
___ b. You can read **articles** in a newspaper.
2. ___ a. If you make a **profit**, you have more money than you did before.
___ b. If you have **professional** training, you can't do a difficult job.
3. ___ a. The Earth is a very **thin** planet.
___ b. If something is a **symbol**, it stands for something else.
4. ___ a. You can use **stairs** to go up inside a building.
___ b. Since she is a lawyer, people call my wife an **artist**.
5. ___ a. There are many **apartments** in one building.
___ b. Your **attitude** is the way you look.
6. ___ a. You cannot get information from a **magazine**.
___ b. If you **compare** two things, you say how they are different.
7. ___ a. If you **judge** something, you know if it is good or bad.
___ b. **Neighbors** are people who live far from you.
8. ___ a. A **meal** has food and a drink.
___ b. A **shape** is something you cannot see.
9. ___ a. A **symbol** is a picture of two different things.
___ b. You must have **space** to add more things to a room.
10. ___ a. If something has low **quality**, it is very good.
___ b. A **material** is used to make something else.

The Crazy Artist

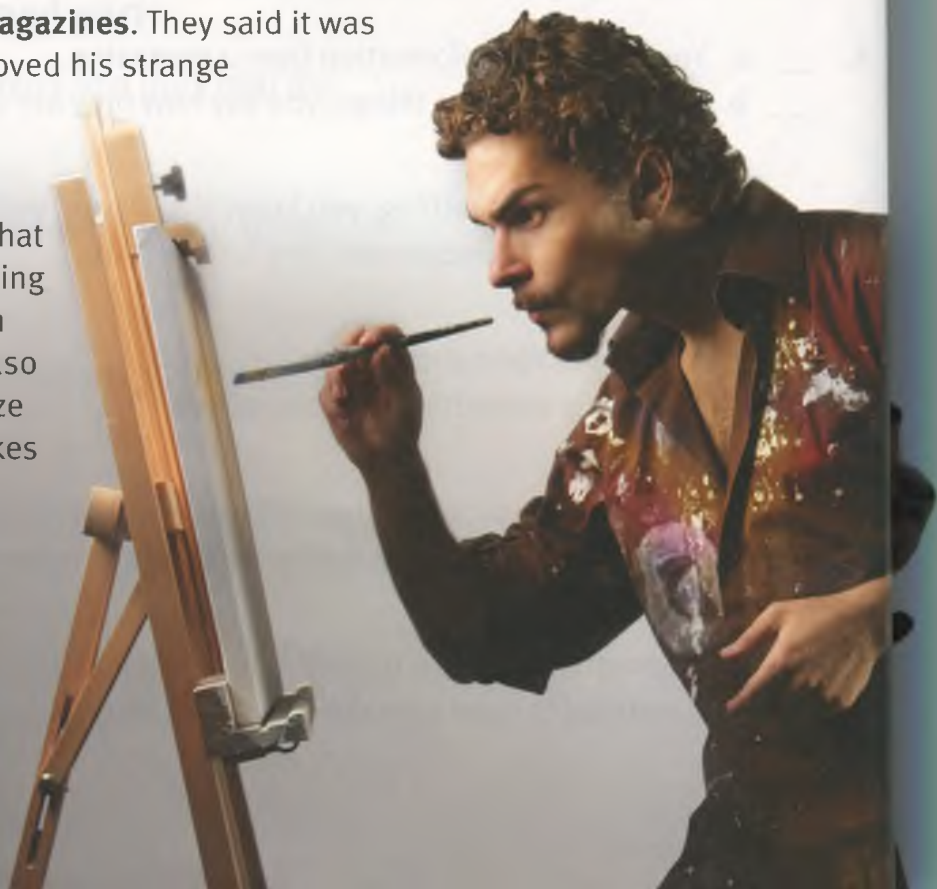
Frenhofer was the best **artist** in the world. Everyone loved him. The **quality** of his paintings was very high. He always used the best **materials**. He made a big **profit** from his paintings. He had delicious **meals** with his rich **neighbors**. He taught art classes. Life was good.

Then his **attitude** changed. He stopped selling paintings and teaching. He tried a new **method** of painting. He stayed **alone** in his **apartment** all day. He worked all day and all night, rarely eating. Soon Frenhofer became very **thin**. But he kept working on the same painting for many years. He worked as hard as he could.

Finally, he finished the painting. He was very happy and invited other artists to see it. "I want your **professional** opinion," he said. He wanted them to **judge** it and **compare** it to other paintings. Everyone was very excited as they went up the **stairs** to his apartment. Frenhofer was excited to show his painting, and the artists were excited to see it. "They'll love it," he thought. But they did not.

They were surprised by his painting. There was no white anywhere. Frenhofer filled the whole painting with lines and colors. There was no **space** for a normal picture. It was full of strange **shapes**. It looked bad to the other artists. He used **symbols**, and they didn't understand them. They thought it was terrible. "Why did you paint this strange picture?" someone asked. They didn't understand its beauty.

But after some time, many people began to like his painting. People wrote **articles** about it in **magazines**. They said it was his best work. They loved his strange symbols. They loved his strange colors. Frenhofer's painting reminded everyone that just because something was new didn't mean that it was bad. He also helped them to realize that sometimes it takes people a little time to understand great things.





هنرمند دیوانه

فرانهافر بهترین هنرمند دنیا بود. همه عاشق او بودند. کیفیت نقاشی‌های او بسیار بالا بود. همیشه از بهترین مواد استفاده می‌کرد. سود زیادی از نقاشی‌های خود بدست آورد. غذاهای خوشمزه با همسایه‌های ثروتمند خود می‌خورد. در کلاس‌های هنر تدریس می‌کرد. زندگی خوب بود. نگرش او تغییر کرد. دیگر نقاشی نمی‌فروخت و تدریس نمی‌کرد. او روش جدیدی را در نقاشی امتحان کرد. تمام روز تنها در آپارتمان خود ماند. شب و روز کار کرد، به ندرت غذا خورد. خیلی زود فرانهافر بسیار لاغر شد. اما روی همان نقاشی‌ها چندین سال کار کرد. تا جایی که می‌توانست سخت کار کرد.

سرآخر، نقاشی را تمام کرد. خیلی خوشحال بود و بقیه هنرمندان را برای دیدن دعوت کرد و گفت "نظر حرفه‌ای شما را می‌خواهم". او می‌خواست آنها داوری کنند و آن را با نقاشی‌های دیگر مقایسه کنند. همه در حالی که از پله‌ها بالا می‌رفتند تا به آپارتمان او برسند، خیلی هیجان زده بودند. فرانهافر برای نشان دادن نقاشی خود هیجان زده بود، و هنرمندان برای دیدن آن هیجان زده بودند. با خود فکر کرد: آنها عاشق آن خواهند شد.

اما نشدند.

آن‌ها تعجب کردند. هیچ رنگ سفیدی در نقاشی وجود نداشت. فرانهافر کل نقاشی را با خطوط و رنگها پر کرده بود. فضایی برای یک تصویر نرمال و عادی نبود. پر از اشکال عجیب بود. به نظر دیگر هنرمندان زشت رسید. او نمادهایی استفاده کرده بود که آن‌ها نفهمیدند. آن‌ها فکر کردند که فاجعه است. یکی پرسید: چرا این تصاویر عجیب را نقاشی کردی؟ آنها زیبایی‌اش (نقاشی) را درک نکردند.

اما بعد از مدتی، بسیاری از افراد از نقاشی او خوششان آمد. مقاله‌هایی در مجلات منتشر شد. آنها گفتند که آن بهترین کارش بود. آنها عاشق نمادهای عجیبش بودند. عاشق رنگ‌های عجیبش شدند. نقاشی فرانهافر به همه یادآور شد که چون چیزی جدید است دلیل بر بد بودن آن نیست. او همچنین به آنها کمک کرد تا بفهمند که گاهی اوقات برای مردم مدتی زمان می‌برد تا چیزهای بزرگ را درک کنند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A painter whose neighbors judge his art as poor quality
 - b. An artist who teaches art classes in his apartment
 - c. A man who writes articles for a magazine
 - d. A thin man who eats meals with friends
2. Why does Frenhofer want the artists to see his painting?
 - a. He wants to sell it to them for a profit.
 - b. He wants them to judge his materials.
 - c. He wants them to give their professional opinion.
 - d. He wants to compare his new method to theirs.
3. What is true of Frenhofer's painting?
 - a. It is made with low-quality materials.
 - b. It is full of strange colors and shapes.
 - c. It does not have any symbols in it.
 - d. It is a picture of other artists.
4. Where do the other artists see his painting?
 - a. It is alone in the space used for art classes.
 - b. They go to Frenhofer's apartment.
 - c. Frenhofer takes it to their apartment.
 - d. It is on sale at a famous store.
5. How do the artists feel as they go up the stairs?



n.

blood

[blʌd]

خون

❖ blood is the red liquid in your body.

➤ I cut my finger and got blood on my shirt.

➤ انگشتم را بریدم و روی پیراهنم خون ریخت.

v.

burn

[bɜ:rn]

آتش زدن، سوزاندن، سوختن

❖ To burn something is to set it on fire.

➤ I burned some wood in the camp fire.

➤ من چند تا چوب را آتش زدم.

n.

cell

[sel]

سلول

❖ A cell is a small room where a person is locked in.

➤ The jail cell was very small.

➤ سلول زندان بسیار کوچک بود.

v.

contain

[kən'tein]

حاوی بودن، شامل بودن، در بر داشتن

❖ To contain something is to have it inside.

➤ The mailbox contained a letter.

➤ صندوق پستی حاوی یک نامه بود.





adj.

correct

[kə'rekt]

درست، صحیح

❖ To be correct is to be right.

➤ All of my answers on the test were correct.

➤ تمام جواب های من در آزمون، صحیح بود.



n.

crop

[kra:p]

محصول

❖ A crop is food that a farmer grows.

➤ Wheat is a crop that is made into bread.

➤ گندم محصولی است که به نان تبدیل می شود.



v.

demand

[di'mænd]

خواستار شدن، تقاضا کردن، درخواست کردن

❖ To demand something is to say strongly that you want it.

➤ The workers demanded to be paid more money.

➤ کارگران خواستار دریافت پول بیشتری شدند.



adj.

equal

['i:kwəl]

برابر، مساوی

❖ To be equal is to be the same.

➤ Both students are equal in age.

➤ هر دوی دانش آموزان، در سن، برابر هستند.





v.

feed

[fi:d]

غذا دادن

❖ To feed is to give food.

➤ Mother feeds my baby brother everyday.

➤ مادر هر روز به برادر کوچکم غذا می دهد.

n.

hole

[hoʊl]

سوراخ

❖ A hole is an opening in something.

➤ The man was going to jump into the hole in the ice.

➤ مرد قصد داشت به درون گودال یخ پرش کند.

v.

increase

[in'kri:s]

افزایش دادن

❖ To increase something is to make it larger or more.

➤ They've increased the price of gas by 15 cents!

➤ آن ها قیمت بنزین را 15 سنت افزایش داده اند!

n.

lord

[lɔ:rd]

ارباب

❖ Long ago, a lord was a man in charge of a town.

➤ The lord of the town was not kind.

➤ ارباب شهر، مهربان نبود.



v.

owe

[əʊ]

بدهکار بودن

❖ To owe is to have to pay or give back something received from another.

➤ I owed him twenty dollars, so I paid him back.

➤ من به او بیست دلار بدهکار بودم، بنابراین به او پس دادم.



n.

position

[pə'zɪʃn]

موقعیت، وضعیت، حالت

❖ A position is the way something is placed.

➤ How can you sit in that position?

➤ چگونه می توانید در آن حالت بنشینید؟



v.

raise

[reɪz]

بلند کردن، بالا بردن، بالا رفتن

❖ To raise something is to lift it up.

➤ We had to work together to raise the last piece.

➤ ما باید با هم کار می کردیم تا آخرین قطعه را بلند کنیم.



adj.

responsible

[rɪ]

مسئولیت پذیر، مسئول، مسئولیت پذیر

❖ If a person is responsible, they do the right things.

➤ I try to be responsible and save money.

➤ من سعی می کنم مسئولیت پذیر باشم و پس انداز کنم.



n.

sight

[saɪt]

منظره



❖ A sight is something interesting to see.

➤ I saw the pyramids of Egypt. What a sight!

➤ من اهرام مصر را دیدم. چه منظره ای!

n.

spot

[spɑ:t]

مکان، نقطه، محل



❖ A spot is a place where something happens.

➤ The kitchen is a good spot to eat meals.

➤ آشپزخانه، مکان مناسبی برای خوردن وعده های غذایی است.

n.

structure

['strʌktʃər]

ساختمان، ساختار



❖ A structure is a building.

➤ They just built a beautiful new structure downtown.

➤ آن‌ها به تازگی یک ساختمان جدید زیبا را در مرکز شهر ساختند.

adj.

whole

[hoʊl]

کل، همه، تمام، کامل



❖ whole means all of something.

➤ I ate the whole pie. We don't have any more.

➤ کل کیک رو خوردم. دیگر نداریم.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- the liquid in your body
a. spot b. blood c. cell d. owe
- to set on fire
a. burn b. increase c. feed d. contain
- doing what you should do
a. demand b. raise c. position d. responsible
- the same as something else
a. hole b. structure c. lord d. equal
- something interesting to see
a. sight b. correct c. whole d. crop

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

feed whole cell spot correct

- I left my coat in the _____ by the window.
- The poor man had no money to _____ his family.
- The robber was locked in a _____ for a year.
- Did you read the _____ book or just part of it?
- If I get the answers _____, I will pass the test.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the better response to each question.

- What did your father demand?
 a. He is not nice. b. That I clean my room.
- Will you help me raise this?
 a. Yes. How high? b. Yes, it goes lower.
- What position were these in?
 a. They were next to each other. b. They came from the store.
- Does that bottle contain water?
 a. Yes. What is inside it? b. No, it has milk in it.
- Did you hear that Jim's house burned down?
 a. That is terrible! b. Is it bigger now?

Exercise 4

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

- structure / cell**
 The bad guy sat on the floor of his _____.
 Dad says the old _____ is not safe.
- lord / owe**
 The _____ ruled over 100 people in the town.
 I still _____ the bank money for my university loan.
- spot / position**
 Won't your legs hurt if you stay in that _____ for long?
 This is our favorite picnic _____.
- whole / hole**
 The _____ class was excited.
 I dug a _____ to put a tree in.
- crop / feed**
 Do not _____ any of the animals at the zoo.
 The farmer grew a _____ of potatoes.

The Farmer and the Cats

Arthur was a **responsible** farmer, and Maria was a nice lady. But they were poor. They **owed** the town **lord** money for their land. One summer, their farm **burned**. One **structure** caught fire, and most of the animals ran away. Only the cats stayed. So Arthur and Maria had to bring in their **crops** without an animal's help.

On a fall day, the lord **demanded** his money. Arthur asked if the lord could wait until he brought in his crops.

The lord was angry. He **raised** his hands high and yelled, "Pay me by the end of the week. If you don't, I will **increase** the money you have to pay. I might put you in a jail **cell**."

So Arthur and Maria worked until there was **blood** on their hands. They finished four lines of corn and went to bed.

But the next morning, eight lines were finished! "Maria, didn't we stop in this **spot** here?" Arthur asked.

"Yes, that is **correct**. And the tools were in a different **position**, too," Maria said. They were surprised and happy. That day, they worked hard and finished five lines.

But in the morning, ten lines were done! Each day they did a lot of work. Each night, someone else did an **equal** amount of work. In a week, the **whole** field was finished. "Tomorrow I will sell the crops and pay the lord," Arthur said. But that morning, the crops were gone. A bag was in the middle of the field. It **contained** money.

"Maria, let's see who has helped us work." Through a **hole** in the wall, they saw a funny **sight**. The cats were dancing in the field and eating corn! Now Arthur knew what had happened. The cats had worked at night! After that, Arthur was very nice to his cats and **fed** them lots of corn.





کشاورز و گربه‌ها

آرتور یک مزرعه‌دار وظیفه‌شناس بود، و ماریا خانم خوبی بود. اما آن‌ها فقیر بودند. بابت زمین‌شان به ارباب شهر بدهکار بودند. در یک تابستان، مزرعه‌ی آن‌ها در آتش سوخت. یکی از سازه‌ها (ساختمان‌ها) آتش گرفت و بسیاری از حیوانات فرار کردند. فقط گربه‌ها ماندند.

بنابراین آرتور و ماریا مجبور بودند محصولات را بدون کمک حیوانات پرورش دهند. در یکی از روزهای پاییز، ارباب پول خود را طلب کرد. آرتور از او خواست که آیا می‌تواند صبر کند تا وقتی که محصولاتش را به بار آورد. ارباب عصبانی بود. دستانش را بلند کرد و فریاد زد "تا آخر هفته باید (پول را) پرداخت کنی. اگه پرداخت نکنی، پولی که باید پرداخت کنی را افزایش خواهم داد. شاید حتی بندازمت زندان"

بنابراین آرتور و ماریا خیلی کار کردند تا جایی که دست‌شان خونی شد. آنها چهار ردیف از ذرت را تمام کردند و به رختخواب رفتند. اما صبح روز بعد، هشت خط تمام شده بودند. آرتور پرسید: "ماریا، مگه ما تا اینجا جمع نکرده بودیم؟" ماریا پاسخ داد "آره درسته و ابزارها یک جای دیگه بودند." آن‌ها متعجب و خوشحال بودند. آن روز، آنها خیلی سخت کار کردند و پنج خط را به اتمام رساندند. اما صبح روز بعد ده خط انجام شده بود. هر روز خیلی کار کردند. هر شب، فرد دیگری همان میزان کار را انجام می‌داد.

در طول یک هفته، کار کل زمین تمام شده بود. آرتور گفت "فردا علوفه‌ها رو می‌فروشم و پول ارباب رو پرداخت می‌کنم" اما صبح آن روز، علوفه‌ها ناپدید شدند. کیفی در وسط زمین وجود داشت که حاوی پول بود. "ببینیم کی به ما کمک کرده ماریا" از سوراخی در دیوار، یک صحنه‌ی جالب دیدند. گربه‌ها می‌رقصیدند و ذرت می‌خوردند. حالا آرتور می‌دانست که چه اتفاقی افتاده است. گربه‌ها شب‌ها کار کرده بودند! از آن پس، آرتور رفتار خیلی خوبی با گربه‌های خود داشت و ذرت زیادی به آن‌ها می‌داد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What does Arthur do in the story?
 - a. Put the lady in a jail cell
 - b. Raise his hands high
 - c. Demand money from people
 - d. Work until there is blood on his hands

2. What is true of the cats in the story?
 - a. They burn the farm and scare the animals.
 - b. They do work equal to Arthur's work.
 - c. They think Arthur is very responsible.
 - d. They put all the tools in one spot.

3. What does the bag contain?
 - a. A gift for the lady
 - b. Corn to feed the animals
 - c. Money for the lord
 - d. A new kind of crop

4. What sight did Maria and Arthur see in the morning?
 - a. A hole in the wall of their house
 - b. A whole new structure on the farm
 - c. The lord working in their fields
 - d. The cats dancing on the farm

5. When will the lord increase the money that Arthur has to pay?



n.

coach

[kəʊtʃ]

مربی

- ❖ A coach is a person who teaches sports.
- My coach gets very excited during games.

➤ مربی من در طی بازی‌ها بسیار هیجان‌زده می‌شود.



v.

control

[kən]

کنترل کردن، نظارت کردن

- ❖ To control something is to make it do what you want.
- To control the TV, just push the buttons

➤ برای کنترل کردن تلویزیون، فقط دکمه‌ها را فشار دهید.



n.

description

[di'skripʃn]

توضیح، توصیف، شرح

- ❖ A description of someone or something says what they are like.
- I gave a description of the man with the gun and hat to the police.

➤ آن مرد با اسلحه و کلاه را برای پلیس توصیف کردم.



adj.

direct

[də'rekt]

مستقیم

- ❖ If something is direct, it goes straight between two places.
- The green path is a direct route to my house.

➤ مسیر سبز یک مسیر مستقیم به خانه من است.



n.

exam

[ɪg'zæm]

امتحان

- ❖ An exam is a test.
- I did some practice questions for the math exam on the board.
- من چند سوال را در مورد امتحان ریاضی روی تخته حل کردم.



n.

example

[ɪg]

نمونه، مثال

- ❖ An example of something is a thing that is typical of it.
- Cola is an example of a soft drink.
- کولا نمونه‌ای از یک نوشیدنی غیرالکلی است.



n.

limit

['lɪmɪt]

حد، حدود

- ❖ A limit is the largest or smallest amount of something that you allow.
- My mother put a limit on how much I could use the phone.
- مادرم محدودیتی برای اینکه چقدر می توانم از تلفن استفاده کنم، ایجاد کرد.



adj.

local

['ləʊkl]

محلی

- ❖ If something is local, it is nearby.
- The local market in my neighborhood sells all the food we need.
- بازار محلی در همسایگی ام، تمام غذایی که نیاز داریم را می‌فروشد.



adj.

magical

[ˈmædʒɪkl]

جادویی، سحرآمیز

❖ magical describes a quality that makes someone or something special.

➤ The fireworks made the night sky look so magical.

➤ آتش‌بازی، شب را بسیار جادویی جلوه می‌داد.

n.

mail

[meɪl]

پست، نامه

❖ mail is letters and other things sent to people.

➤ I get a lot of mail because I have friends all over the world.

➤ نامه های الکترونیکی زیادی دریافت می کنم زیرا در تمام دنیا دوستانی دارم.

n.

novel

[ˈnɒ:vəl]

رمان

❖ A novel is a book that tells a story.

➤ He wrote a great novel about ancient China.

➤ او یک رمان عالی در مورد چین باستان نوشت.

n.

outline

[ˈaʊtlaɪn]

طرح کلی

❖ An outline is the plan for a story or essay.

➤ Before I wrote my essay, I made an outline.

➤ قبل از اینکه مقاله خود را بنویسم، طرح کلی را بیان کردم.





n.

poet

['pouət]

شاعر

- ❖ A poet is a person who writes poems.
- William Shakespeare was one of the greatest poets.
- ویلیام شکسپیر یکی از بزرگ‌ترین شعرا بود.



v.

print

[print]

چاپ کردن

- ❖ To print something is to put it onto paper.
- Make sure that you print your name clearly.
- مطمئن شو که اسمت رو به وضوح چاپ کنی.



n.

scene

[si:n]

صحنه

- ❖ A scene is one part of a book or movie.
- A movie is made up of many short pieces or scenes.
- یک فیلم از بسیاری از قطعات و یا صحنه‌های کوتاه ساخته شده‌است.



n.

sheet

[ʃi:t]

ورق، برگه، صفحه

- ❖ A sheet is a thin flat piece of paper.
- I only needed a single sheet of paper to do my homework.
- من فقط یک برگه کاغذ لازم داشتم تا تکالیفم را انجام بدهم.



adj.

silly

[ˈsɪli]

احمقانه

❖ If someone or something is silly, they show a lack of thought.

➤ I made a silly mistake of dropping mom's vase.

➤ من اشتباه احمقانه ای کردم که گلدان مادر را رها کردم.



n.

store

[stɔːr]

فروشگاه، سوپر مارکت

❖ A store is a place where you can buy things.

➤ I picked up a few things at the grocery store.

➤ یک سری خرت و پرت از سوپر مارکت گرفتم.



v.

suffer

[ˈsʌfə]

رنج بردن، رنج کشیدن

❖ To suffer is to feel pain.

➤ Her headache made her suffer all day.

➤ سردرد او باعث شده تا تمام روز رنج ببرد.



n.

technology

[tek]

فناوری، تکنولوژی

❖ technology is new things made by using science.

➤ He loves technology such as laptop computers.

➤ او عاشق فناوری مانند رایانه و لپ تاپ است.

Exercise 1

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. He got a low score on the science test.
ex _____
2. The evening was filled with special things that made it different.
ma _____
3. He loves to have the best things that are new to the world.
tech _____
4. I only read the plan for the story.
ou _____
5. The writer is good at making sentences about what someone looks like.
de _____

Part B Check (✓) the better response to each question.

1. Have you been to the local cinema?
___ a. Yes, I went there yesterday. ___ b. No, it is in the other city.
2. Will you go to the store?
___ a. No, I saw it yesterday. ___ b. Yes, I need a new hat.
3. Do you like the new coach?
___ a. Yes, he's very nice. ___ b. No, it is too expensive.
4. What was your favorite scene?
___ a. I didn't like any of them. ___ b. I bought it last week.
5. Did you buy the novel?
___ a. Yes, he was very nice. ___ b. No, someone gave it to me.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. I like to read, _____.
___ a. so I buy many novels ___ b. so I am a poet
2. He doesn't always use the best judgment, _____.
___ a. she suffers a lot ___ b. so he makes some silly mistakes
3. He has many computers. _____.
___ a. They are on sheets ___ b. He loves technology
4. I don't play on the soccer team _____.
___ a. because I don't like the coach
___ b. because the outline is too long
5. She likes her teacher. _____.
___ a. He uses helpful examples
___ b. He writes a lot of mail in class
6. The movie was too boring. _____.
___ a. They shouldn't have printed it
___ b. It needed more exciting scenes
7. My dog won't bite you. _____.
___ a. I can control it ___ b. He is doing an exam
8. I need to buy some food, so _____.
___ a. I'm going to the store ___ b. I am over the limit
9. She doesn't like that book because _____.
___ a. she has a local book ___ b. the examples are not clear enough
10. When he travels, _____.
___ a. he always takes a direct flight
___ b. he gives a description of airplanes

A Magical Book

Sarah loved to read. She read **novels** and poems. She loved the beautiful **descriptions** and phrases. She loved reading work from **poets** and novelists. She didn't like video games or **technology**. She was on the basketball team, but she didn't like sports. Her parents made her play basketball. In fact, Sarah's parents made her do many things. But she didn't want to do those things. She just wanted to sit and read all day.

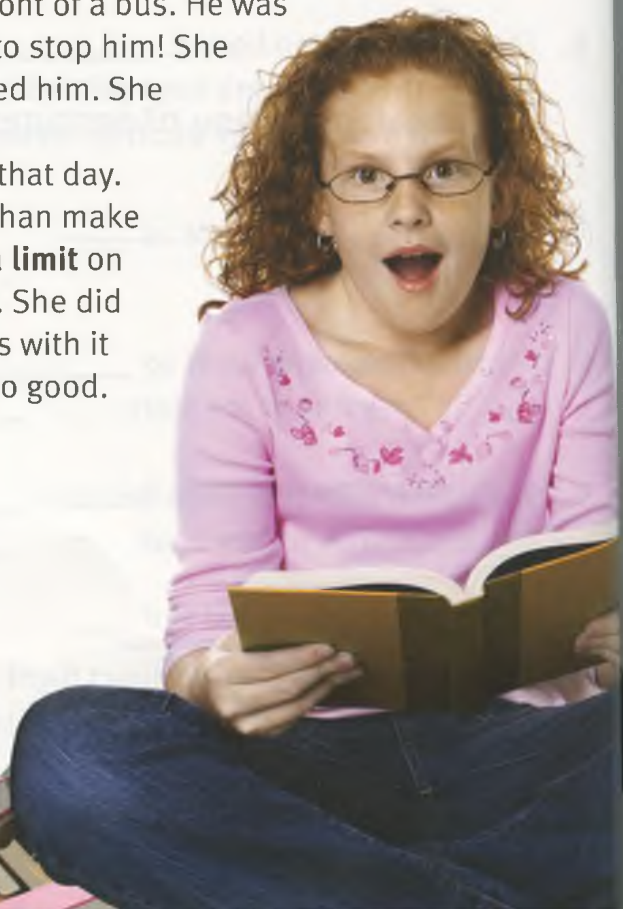
One day, a small book came in the **mail**. It was for Sarah. The book looked very special. It was **printed** on **sheets** of gold. Sarah began to read. The **outline** of the story was simple. It was about a **magical** place. Strange things happened there. One **example** from the book was about a boy who could **control** people. In one **scene**, he made his friends tell funny jokes.

Sarah loved the book. She read it all the time. Then something strange happened. The book gave Sarah a special power. She could control other people. She was like the boy in the book. During one **exam**, she made her friend tell **silly** jokes. Her friend got in trouble.

After school, Sarah did not make a **direct** trip home. On the way, she went to the **local store**. She wanted to play more tricks on people. She caused problems. She made people fall down. She laughed and had fun.

Finally she left and started to walk home. Then she saw something. Her basketball **coach** was about to walk in front of a bus. He was looking the other way. She had to stop him! She used her power. She controlled him. She made him stop walking.

Sarah learned something that day. It was better to help people than make them **suffer**. So, she put a **limit** on how she used her power. She did not want to do bad things with it anymore. She only wanted to do good.





یک کتاب جادویی

سارا عاشق کتاب خواندن بود. او رمان و شعر می‌خواند. عبارات و توصیفات زیبا را دوست داشت. به خواندن کار (کتاب) رمان‌نویس‌ها و شاعرها علاقه داشت. بازی‌های کامپیوتری یا فناوری را دوست نداشت. او در تیم بسکتبال بود اما علاقه‌ای به ورزش نداشت.

والدینش او را مجبور کردند تا بسکتبال بازی کند. درحقیقت، پدر و مادر سارا او را مجبور به کارهای زیادی می‌کردند. اما او نمی‌خواست تا آن کارها را انجام دهد. او فقط می‌خواست در خانه بنشیند و کتاب بخواند. یک روز، کتاب کوچکی توسط پست آمد. آن کتاب مال سارا بود. کتاب خیلی ویژه به نظر می‌آمد. روی برگه‌های طلا چاپ شده بود.

سارا شروع به خواندن کرد. طرح داستان خیلی ساده بود. راجع به مکانی جادویی بود. اتفاقات عجیبی آن‌جا رخ دادند. مثالی از کتاب در مورد پسری بود که می‌توانست مردم را کنترل کند. در یک صحنه، او دوستانش را وادار کرد جوک‌های خنده دار تعریف کنند. سارا عاشق کتاب شد.

همیشه آن را می‌خواند. بعد اتفاق عجیبی روی داد. کتاب به سارا قدرتی ویژه داد. او می‌توانست دیگران را کنترل کند. مثل پسری که در داستان بود. در یک امتحان، او دوستش را وادار به گفتن جوک‌های احمقانه کرد و او به دردرس افتاد. پس از مدرسه، سارا مستقیم به طرف خانه نرفت. سر راه، به فروشگاه رفت. می‌خواست ترفندهای بیشتری را روی مردم اجرا کند.

مشکلاتی به وجود آورد. باعث شد مردم به زمین بیافتند. او خندید خوش گذراند. در نهایت آنجا را ترک کرد و شروع به قدم زدن به طرف خانه کرد. سپس چیزی دید. مربی بسکتبال او نزدیک بود برود جلوی یک اتوبوس. او داشت سمت دیگری را نگاه میکرد. باید او را متوقف می‌کرد. از قدرتش استفاده کرد. او را کنترل کرد. او را وادار کرد تا بایستد. سارا آن روز یاد گرفت که بهتر است به جای اذیت و رنجش مردم به آن‌ها کمک کرد.

او محدودیتی برای اینکه چگونه از قدرتش استفاده کند قرار داد. دیگر نمی‌خواست کارهای بدی با آن انجام دهد. فقط می‌خواست کارهای خوب انجام دهد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A girl who gets a novel about technology in the mail
 - b. A basketball coach who tells jokes to people
 - c. A man who takes a direct trip to the local store
 - d. A girl who can control other people
2. Why does Sarah love to read?
 - a. It gives her control over other people.
 - b. She likes the phrases and descriptions in books.
 - c. She likes to tell jokes to her teachers.
 - d. She wants to be a poet.
3. What does Sarah learn in the end?
 - a. She should make other people suffer.
 - b. Simple stories are the best.
 - c. She must limit her power.
 - d. She should not read during an exam.
4. What is true about the magical book?
 - a. It is printed on sheets of gold.
 - b. Its outline is hard to understand.
 - c. It gives examples of good jokes.
 - d. Sarah doesn't want to write in it.
5. Why is Sarah on the basketball team?



prep.

across

[ə'krɔ:s]

، از میان، به طرف دیگر، از عرض

❖ To go across something is to go to the other side of it.

➤ He walked across the board to the other side.

➤ او در کنار تخته به طرف دیگر قدم زد.



v.

breathe

[bri:ð]

نفس کشیدن

❖ To breathe means to let air go in and out of our body.

➤ We need strong healthy lungs to help us breathe well.

➤ ما به ریه های سالم و قوی نیاز داریم تا به خوبی به ما در نفس کشیدن کمک کنند.



n.

characteristic

[,kærəktə'ri
stɪk]

ویژگی، مشخصه

❖ A characteristic is something that shows what a person or a thing is like.

➤ One characteristic of tigers is their black stripes.

➤ یکی از ویژگی‌های ببرها، راه‌راه‌های سیاه آن‌هاست.



v.

consume

[kən]

مصرف کردن

❖ To consume something means to eat or drink it.

➤ Jack consumed a whole plate of spaghetti.

➤ جک، یک بشقاب کامل اسپاگتی را مصرف کرد.



v.

excite

[ɪk'saɪt]

هیجان زده کردن، به هیجان انداختن، برانگیختن

- ❖ To excite someone means to make them happy and interested.
- I heard about the school dance on Friday. This excited me.
- روز جمعه درباره رقص مدرسه شنیدم. این مرا هیجان زده کرد.



adj.

extreme

[ɪk'stri:m]

شدید، بی نهایت

- ❖ If something is extreme, it is in a large amount or degree.
- His workout was so extreme that he was sweating heavily.
- تمرین او به حدی شدید بود که به شدت عرق می کرد.



n.

fear

[fɪr]

ترس

- ❖ fear is the feeling of being afraid.
- I have a great fear of skateboarding.
- من از اسکیت برد ترس زیادی دارم.



adj.

fortunate

['fɔ:rtʃ]

خوش شانس

- ❖ If you are fortunate, you are lucky.
- I was fortunate to get a seat.
- من خوش شانس بودم که یک صندلی بگیرم.



v.

happen

[ˈhæpən]

اتفاق افتادن، تصادفا برخورد کردن

- ❖ If someone happens to do something, they do it by chance.
- I happen to meet some new friends at school today.
- من امروز اتفاقا با بعضی از دوستان جدید در مدرسه ملاقات می‌کنم.



n.

length

[lenθ]

طول

- ❖ The length of something is how long it is from one end to the other.
- The length of the floor is three meters.
- طول کف، سه متر است.



n.

mistake

[mɪ'steɪk]

اشتباه

- ❖ A mistake is something you do wrong.
- My boss always yells at me when I make a mistake.
- رئیسم همیشه وقتی اشتباه می‌کنم سرم فریاد می‌زند.



v.

observe

[əb'zɜ:rv]

مشاهده کردن

- ❖ To observe something is to watch it.
- Brian observed the sun rising over the mountains.
- برایان طلوع خورشید را بر فراز کوه مشاهده کرد.



n.

opportunity

[,ɑ:pər'tu:]

فرصت

- ❖ An opportunity is a chance to do something.
- I had an opportunity to take pictures in the jungle.

➤ فرصتی داشتم که در جنگل عکس بگیرم.



n.

prize

[praɪz]

جایزه

- ❖ A prize is something of value that is given to the winner.
- I won a prize for getting the best grade on my science test.

➤ من برای کسب بهترین نمره در آزمون علمی خود موفق به کسب جایزه شدم.



n.

race

[reɪs]

مسابقه

- ❖ A race is a contest to see who is the fastest.
- Paul is a fast runner, so he easily won the race.

➤ پل دونده سریعی است، بنابراین به راحتی در این مسابقه پیروز شد.



v.

realize

['ri:əlaɪz]

فهمیدن

- ❖ To realize is to suddenly understand.
- After I left my house, I realized that I left the light on.

➤ بعد از اینکه خانه ام رو ترک کردم فهمیدم که چراغ را روشن گذاشتم.



v.

respond

[ri'spa:nd]

جواب دادن، پاسخ دادن



- ❖ To respond is to give an answer to what someone else said.
- When the teacher asked the question, we all responded.
- وقتی معلم سوال پرسید، همه ی ما جواب دادیم.

n.

risk

[risk]

ریسک



- ❖ A risk is a chance of something bad happening.
- I took a risk and climbed the snowy mountain.

➤ من ریسک کردم و از کوه یخی بالا رفتم.

v.

wonder

['wʌndər]

ندانستن، شك داشتن، در شگفت بودن



- ❖ To wonder is to ask yourself questions or have a need to know.
- The young mother wondered if she'd have a boy or a girl.
- مادر جوان نمیدانست که آیا او یک پسر دارد یا دختر.

adv.

yet

[jet]

هنوز



- ❖ yet is used to say something has not happened up to now.
- We can't go out yet; we're still eating.

➤ هنوز نمی‌توانیم بیرون برویم؛ هنوز داریم غذا می‌خوریم.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. something of value that is given to the winner
 - a. opportunity
 - b. prize
 - c. risk
 - d. happen
2. lucky
 - a. extreme
 - b. across
 - c. fortunate
 - d. yet
3. to eat
 - a. consume
 - b. breathe
 - c. realize
 - d. observe
4. the feeling of being afraid
 - a. length
 - b. fear
 - c. happen
 - d. characteristic
5. to do by chance
 - a. respond
 - b. realize
 - c. excite
 - d. happen
6. how long something is
 - a. length
 - b. characteristic
 - c. wonder
 - d. mistake
7. to let air in and out of your body
 - a. observe
 - b. breathe
 - c. consume
 - d. excite
8. something you did wrong
 - a. happen
 - b. fear
 - c. mistake
 - d. risk
9. up to this point
 - a. extreme
 - b. length
 - c. across
 - d. yet
10. to understand
 - a. realize
 - b. breathe
 - c. respond
 - d. observe

Exercise 2

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I had to walk to the other side of the school to get to my next class.
acr _____
2. Brad chose not to give an answer when I asked about his weekend.
resp _____
3. Sarah ran around the park to get ready for the contest where people run against each other.
ra ____
4. Michael saw the accident that occurred today.
obs _____
5. Renee knew there was a chance of something bad happening when she went swimming in the ocean.
r _____

Part B Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Being tall is a characteristic of many trees.
___ b. I was fortunate because I received some useless gifts.
2. ___ a. Because he left work early, Carl had an opportunity to go to the concert.
___ b. I could feel the length of the air outside.
3. ___ a. Angela felt fear when she got a good grade on her test.
___ b. Our team won. We were fortunate.
4. ___ a. Jeremy thought his hair was just the right length.
___ b. Michelle left her characteristic at my house.
5. ___ a. Theresa found an opportunity on the ground outside.
___ b. Billy feels fear when he has to talk in front of people.

The Big Race

A dog saw a group of animals **across** the road. He walked over to meet them. "What are you doing?" he asked them.

"I just sold them tickets to a race between the rabbit and the turtle," the duck **responded**.

This news **excited** the dog. He felt **fortunate** that he **happened** to be there. "I don't have anything to do today," the dog said. "I want to buy a ticket, too."

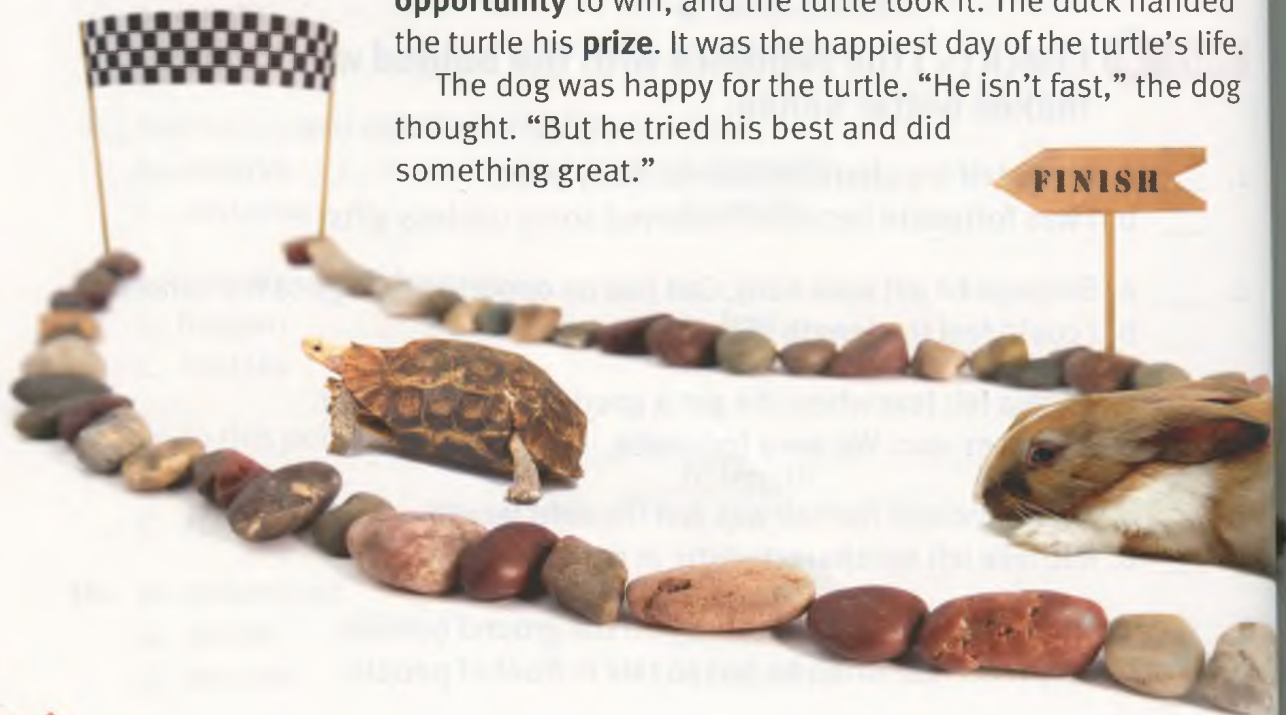
The dog sat down to **observe** the **race**. The race would be **extreme**. It would be many kilometers in **length**. The rabbit and the turtle stood next to each other. They waited for the race to start. The dog **wondered** why the turtle agreed to run against the rabbit. Being fast was not a **characteristic** of turtles. The rabbit was going to win easily.

Suddenly, the race began. The rabbit ran extremely quickly. The turtle walked slowly. After a minute, the rabbit looked back. He saw that the turtle was far behind him and was **breathing** quickly because he was so tired. The rabbit smiled and slowed to a walk.

A minute later, the rabbit said, "I'm winning, so I'll take a rest." He sat and began to **consume** some grass. Then, he let his eyes close. He wasn't the winner **yet**. But there was no **risk** of him losing the race. He went to sleep.

Hours later, a loud sound woke him. All of the animals were yelling and looking at the field. He felt **fear** for the first time. The turtle was almost at the finish line. Now, the rabbit **realized** his **mistake**. But the race was over. He gave the turtle an **opportunity** to win, and the turtle took it. The duck handed the turtle his **prize**. It was the happiest day of the turtle's life.

The dog was happy for the turtle. "He isn't fast," the dog thought. "But he tried his best and did something great."





مسابقه‌ی بزرگ

سگی گروهی از حیوانات را در آن طرف جاده دید. به طرف آنها رفت تا آنها را ملاقات کند. از آنها پرسید: "چکار می‌کنید؟" اردک پاسخ داد: همین الان بلیط مسابقه‌ی بین خرگوش و لاک پشت را به آنها فروختم. این خبر سگ را هیجانزده کرد. احساس خوش شانسی کرد که به طور اتفاقی آنجا است. سگ گفت: "امروز کاری برای انجام دادن ندارم" "من هم یک بلیط می‌خواهم" سگ نشست تا مسابقه را تماشا کند.

مسابقه‌ای غیرعادی می‌شد. چندین کیلومتر طول خواهد داشت. خرگوش و لاک‌پشت کنار یکدیگر ایستادند. آنها صبر کردند تا مسابقه آغاز شود. سگ تعجب کرد که چرا لاک پشت قبول کرده است که در برابر خرگوش بدود. سریع بودن یک ویژگی از لاک پشت‌ها نبود. خرگوش قرار بود که به سادگی برنده شود. ناگهان، مسابقه آغاز شد. خرگوش خیلی سریع دوید. لاک‌پشت به آهستگی حرکت کرد.

پس از یک دقیقه، خرگوش به عقب نگاه کرد. او دید که لاک‌پشت خیلی عقب‌تر از اوست و تند تند نفس می‌کشد زیرا خیلی خسته بود. خرگوش لبخندی زد و آهسته قدم زد. یک دقیقه بعد، خرگوش گفت "دارم می‌برم پس کمی استراحت خواهم کرد" نشست و شروع به خوردن مقداری علف کرد.

بعد چشمان خود را بست. هنوز برنده نشده بود. اما ریسکی وجود نداشت که مسابقه را ببازد. او به خواب رفت. چندین ساعت بعد، یک صدای بلند او را بیدار کرد. تمام حیوانات فریاد می‌زدند و زمین مسابقه را نگاه می‌کردند. برای اولین بار احساس ترس کرد. لاک‌پشت تقریباً نزدیک به خط پایان بود. حالا خرگوش متوجه اشتباه خود شد. اما مسابقه به پایان رسید.

او به لاک‌پشت فرصتی برای پیروزی داد و لاک‌پشت از آن استفاده کرد. اردک به لاک پشت جایزه‌اش را داد. این شادترین روز در زندگی لاک‌پشت بود. سگ برای لاک‌پشت خوشحال بود. سگ با خود فکر کرد: "او سریع نیست" "اما همه‌ی سعی خودش رو کرد و کار بزرگی انجام داد."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A race between a rabbit and a turtle
 - b. The risk of running in a race
 - c. The extreme speed of rabbits
 - d. How to observe a turtle
2. What did the duck do for the other animals?
 - a. He told them the news.
 - b. He gave them a prize.
 - c. He responded to their questions.
 - d. He sold tickets to them.
3. Why did the dog think the turtle had no opportunity to win the race?
 - a. The turtle hadn't won a race yet.
 - b. The turtle couldn't walk across such a length.
 - c. Being fast was not a characteristic of turtles.
 - d. The turtle was not fortunate.
4. What did the rabbit do after he woke up?
 - a. He consumed some grass.
 - b. He realized his mistake.
 - c. He breathed quickly.
 - d. He excited the animals.
5. What did the rabbit see to make him feel fear?



n.

academy

[ə'kædəmi]

آکادمی، آموزشگاه

- ❖ An academy is a special type of school.
- There are many courses taught at the academy that I go to.
- درس‌های زیادی در آکادمی که من به آنجا می‌روم، تدریس می‌شود.



adj.

ancient

['eɪnʃənt]

باستانی، کهن

- ❖ If something is ancient, it is very old.
- I want to see the ancient buildings in Rome.
- من می‌خواهم ساختمان‌های باستانی در رُم را ببینم.



n.

board

[bɔ:rd]

تخته، برد

- ❖ A board is a flat piece of wood.
- The sign was made of a few wooden boards.
- این تابلو از چند تا تخته چوبی ساخته شده بود.



n.

century

['sentʃəri]

قرن

- ❖ A century is one hundred years.
- Our company is celebrating a century of business in London.
- شرکت ما قرار است به مناسبت یک قرن تجارت در لندن، جشن بگیرد.



n.

clue

[klu:]

سرنخ

❖ A clue is a fact or object that helps solve a mystery or crime.

➤ The detective found some clues on the sidewalk.

➤ کارآگاه تعدادی سرنخ در پیاده‌رو پیدا کرد.



n.

concert

['kɑ:nsərt]

کنسرت

❖ A concert is an event where you listen to people play music.

➤ I enjoyed the concert last night. The band was very good.

➤ دیشب از کنسرت لذت بردم. گروه خیلی خوبی بود.



n.

county

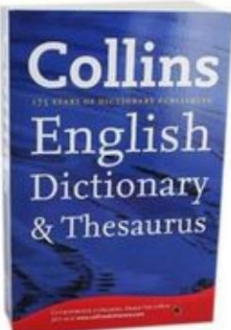
['kaʊnti]

استان، بخش

❖ A county is the largest political division of a state in the US.

➤ He wanted to represent the citizens of his county.

➤ او می‌خواست که نماینده شهروندان استان خود باشد.



n.

dictionary

['dɪkʃə]

فرهنگ لغت

❖ A dictionary is a book that tells you what words mean.

➤ I use the dictionary to learn new words.

➤ من برای یادگیری کلمات جدید از فرهنگ لغت استفاده می‌کنم.



v.

exist

[ɪg'zɪst]

وجود داشتن

- ❖ To exist is to be real.
- Do you really think that unicorns ever existed?
- واقعا فکر می‌کنی که تک‌شاخ‌ها روزگاری وجود داشته‌اند؟

adj.

flat

[flæt]

تخت، صاف



- ❖ flat describes something that is level and smooth with no curved parts.
- My parents bought a new flat screen TV over the weekend.
- والدین من، در آخر هفته یک تلویزیون صفحه تخت جدید خریدند.

n.

gentleman

['dʒentlmən]

آقا، شخص محترم



- ❖ A gentleman is a nice man.
- My grandfather is a kind and helpful gentleman.
- پدربزرگ من آقای مهربان و کمک‌کننده است.

adj.

hidden

['hɪdn]

مخفی، پنهانی



- ❖ hidden means to be not easily noticed or too hard to find.
- The hidden camera recorded everything in the parking lot.
- دوربین مخفی همه چیز را در پارکینگ ضبط کرد.



adv.

maybe

[ˈmeɪbi]

شاید

- ❖ maybe is used to show that something is possible or may be true.
- If I focus hard enough, maybe I can come up with the right answer.
- اگر به اندازه کافی تمرکز داشته باشم، شاید بتوانم جواب درست را بدهم.



n.

officer

[ˈɔːfɪ]

فرمانده، افسر

- ❖ An officer is a leader in the army.
- The soldiers followed the orders of the officer.
- سربازان از دستورات فرمانده پیروی کردند.



adj.

original

[əˈrɪdʒənəl]

اصلی

- ❖ If something is original, it is the first one of that thing.
- This is the original painting of the Mona Lisa.
- این نقاشی اصلی مونا لیزا است.



v.

pound

[paʊnd]

کوبیدن، ضربه زدن

- ❖ To pound something is to hit it many times with a lot of force.
- He pounded the nail with the hammer.
- او روی میخ، با چکش کوبید.



n.

process

[ˈprɑːses]

فرآیند، روند

- ❖ A process is the steps to take to do something. (A series of steps leading to a result)
- Making a cake is a long process.

➤ درست کردن کیک، فرایند طولانی است.



v.

publish

[ˈpʌblɪʃ]

منتشر کردن

- ❖ To publish a book is to get it printed and ready to sell.
- That company publishes daily newspapers.

➤ آن شرکت، روزنامه‌های روزانه منتشر می‌کند.



n.

theater

[ˈθiː.ə.tə]

تئاتر، نمایش

- ❖ A theater is a building where you watch plays, shows, and movies.
- We went to the theater to see a play.

➤ به تئاتر رفتیم تا نمایش ببینیم.



n.

wealth

[welθ]

ثروت، دارایی

- ❖ wealth is a large amount of money.
- One of the most important things to some people is wealth.

➤ یکی از مهم‌ترین چیزها برای برخی از مردم، ثروت است.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

- exist
 - the first one
 - to print a book
 - to be real
 - something to help you
- clue
 - hint
 - steps
 - heavy
 - wood
- maybe
 - where you see shows
 - possible or likely to be true
 - where classes are held
 - where you hear music
- hidden
 - one hundred years
 - level with no curves
 - a nice man
 - not able to be seen
- wealth
 - old
 - leader
 - money
 - season
- pound
 - to hit hard many times
 - the steps you take
 - metal used in money
 - the largest political division of a state
- century
 - first
 - hundred
 - school
 - man
- officer
 - a leader in the army
 - where you listen to music
 - a sports group
 - something you use to help get a job done
- theater
 - where you see a movie
 - a lot of money
 - a hint about something
 - a piece of wood
- ancient
 - to be real
 - possible or likely to be true
 - very old
 - to get a book ready to sell

Exercise 2

Circle two words that are related in each group.

1. a. process b. maybe c. flat d. publish
2. a. board b. century c. pound d. ancient
3. a. county b. concert c. theater d. clue
4. a. gentleman b. officer c. exist d. concert
5. a. ancient b. original c. process d. dictionary

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

flat

academy

theater

process

maybe

This morning, I walked down the hall to the field. It was time to get ready for the big soccer game! My school was playing against a private 1_____.

My team had won every game this year. In the 2_____ of winning games, we had worked hard and had fun. If we won today, our coach said that 3_____ he would take us all to the 4_____ to see a new movie on their latest 5_____ screen.

Adams County's Gold

Adams **Academy** was a good school. Boys lived there and took classes. Tom worked hard all week. On a spring Saturday, he wanted to do something fun!

He asked his friend Jeff to go to the movie **theater**. "Sorry," Jeff answered. "I'm going to a **concert**."

So Tom asked Joe to go to the movies. But Joe's soccer team had a game.

Next, Tom went down the hall to Brad's room. Brad was reading a very large old book. "Hi, Brad," Tom said. "Are you reading a **dictionary**? It looks **ancient**."

"No. This is called *The **Wealth of Adams County***. It's about **hidden** gold in Adams County. It's more than a **century** old. It was **published** in 1870! Look, it even has the **original** cover on it."

Tom asked, "Where did you get it?"

"It's from my dad's friend. He is a nice **gentleman**, an **officer** in the army," answered Brad.

"The gold doesn't really **exist**, does it?" Tom asked.

"I don't know, but **maybe!** There are **clues** to it in this book. Let's find it!" Looking for gold sounded like fun.

The first clue was to find a **flat** tree underground. "It must be in the forest," Tom said.

Brad said, "The flat tree could be a **board** under the dirt. It could cover the gold."

Tom and Brad dug in the dirt all morning. The **process** of looking for gold made them hungry. They were ready to stop for lunch. But then Brad hit something hard. It was a board!

Brad **pounded** on the board until it broke. There was a small hole under it. "Look!" He held up a gold coin.

Tom saw a piece of paper in the hole. "Brad, there's more. It's a map to the rest of the gold!"

Brad smiled. "Let's go!" And they hurried to find the wealth of Adams County.





طلای ایالت آدامز

دانشکده آدامز مدرسه خوبی بود. پسرها آنجا زندگی می‌کردند و در کلاس‌ها شرکت می‌کردند. تام تمام هفته را سخت کار می‌کرد. در یک شنبه‌ی بهاری، خواست تا کاری جالب انجام دهد. از دوستش جف خواست تا با او به سینما بیاید.

جف پاسخ داد "متاسفم، می‌خوام برم کنسرت" تام سراغ جو رفت و از او درخواست کرد. اما تیم فوتبال جو مسابقه داشت. بعد در انتهای راهرو در اتاق "برد" را زد. برد داشت یک کتاب خیلی بزرگ قدیمی را می‌خواند.

تام گفت "سلام برد، داری دیکشنری می‌خونی؟" خیلی عتیقه به نظر میاد "نه اسم این کتاب ثروت ایالت آدامز هست." راجع به طلای پنهان شده در ایالت آدامز هست. قدمت آن بیشتر از یک قرن است. در سال 1870 منتشر شده! بین، حتی جلد اصل داره" تام پرسید "از کجا آوردیش؟" "از طرف دوست پدرم هست." او فرد متشخص، و یک افسر در ارتش است.

تام پرسید: "طلاها واقعا وجود ندارد، اینطور نیست؟" "نمیدونم، ولی شاید! سرنخ‌هایی در این کتاب وجود داره. بیا پیدااش کنیم!" گشتن طلا جالب به نظر می‌رسید. اولین سرنخ یافتن درختی تخت (مسطح) در زیر زمین بود. تام گفت "حتما باید تو جنگل باشه."

برد گفت "درخت تخت می‌تونه تخته‌ای زیر خاک باشه. شاید طلا رو پوشش داده" تام و برد تمام صبح خاک را کردند. فرآیند گشتن دنبال طلا آن‌ها را گرسنه کرد. آماده بودند که نهارو بخورند. اما بعد برد به چیز سختی برخورد کرد.

یک تخته بود! برد روی تخته کوبید تا اینکه شکست. زیر آن گودال کوچکی بود. نگاه کن! او یک سکه طلا را بالا آورد. تام یک تکه کاغذ در گودال دید. "برد باز هم هست. این نقشه‌ای برای بقیه طلاهاست." برد با لبخند گفت: بیا بریم. و آنها با عجله برای پیدا کردن ثروت ایالت آدامز رفتند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

- Where do the boys look for the gold?
 - At Adams Academy
 - At the movie theater
 - In the forest
 - In a concert hall
- What is NOT true of *The Wealth of Adams County*?
 - It was published more than a century ago.
 - It was written by an army officer.
 - It still has its original cover.
 - It tells about a board in the forest floor.
- Why does Brad think the gold really exists?
 - Because there are clues to it in a book
 - Because a gentleman told him it did
 - Because he was given an ancient dictionary
 - Because it was hidden in the spring
- Where will the boys probably go at the end of the story?
 - To get tools to carry the gold
 - To continue the process of finding gold
 - To watch Joe's soccer team
 - To pound on more boards
- Why can't Jeff go to the movie theater?



v.

appreciate

[ə'pri:ʃiət]

، قدردانی کردن، تقدیر کردن

❖ To appreciate something is to understand its good qualities.

➤ I can appreciate the lovely scenery.

➤ میتوانم آن منظره دوستداشتنی را حس کنم.



adj.

available

[ə'veɪləbl]

موجود، در دسترس

❖ If something is available, it means you can get it.

➤ There were many seats available in the room.

➤ تعداد زیادی صندلی در اتاق موجود بود.



v.

beat

[bi:t]

شکست دادن، برنده شدن، زدن

❖ To beat someone means to do better than they do.

➤ I managed to beat everyone in the race.

➤ موفق شدم همه رو در مسابقه شکست بدهم.



adj.

bright

[braɪt]

درخشان، روشن

❖ If something is bright, it shows a lot of light.

➤ The bright light from the explosion hurt my eyes.

➤ نور درخشان تابیده شده از انفجار، به چشمانم صدمه زد.



v.

celebrate

[ˈselibreɪt]

جشن گرفتن

❖ To celebrate is to do something to show that an event is special.

➤ We all celebrated when we heard the great news.

➤ همه ما وقتی خبر عالی را شنیدیم جشن گرفتیم.



v.

determine

[dɪ]

تعیین کردن، مشخص کردن

❖ To determine means to choose or make a decision.

➤ He tried to determine which one to eat first.

➤ او سعی کرد مشخص کند که کدام یک را ابتدا بخورد.



v.

disappear

[ˌdɪsə]

ناپدید شدن

❖ To disappear means to go away or not be seen.

➤ The top of the building is disappearing in the clouds.

➤ بالای ساختمان در حال ناپدید شدن در ابرها است.



adj.

else

[els]

دیگر

❖ If you talk about something else, you talk about something different.

➤ I wanted a bike for my birthday, but I got something else.

➤ من برای تولدم دوچرخه می خواستم، اما چیز دیگری گرفتم.



adj.

fair

[fer]

منصفانه

- ❖ fair describes treating someone in a way that is reasonable or right.
- He sold me his car for a fair price.

➤ او ماشینش را با یک قیمت مناسب به من فروخت.



v.

flow

[flɒʊ]

جاری بودن، جریان داشتن

- ❖ To flow is to move easily and continuously in one direction.
- The water flowed over the rocks and into the lake.

➤ آب روی صخره‌ها و داخل دریاچه جریان داشت.



adv.

forward

['fɔ:rwərd]

به سوی، رو به جلو

- ❖ If you move forward, you move in the direction in front of you.
- When he saw his mother, the baby crawled forward to her.

➤ وقتی مادرش را دید، بچه به سوی او سینه خیز رفت.



n.

hill

[hɪl]

تپه

- ❖ A hill is a round area of land. It is higher than the land around it.
- The sun was rising above the green hills.

➤ خورشید از تپه‌های سبز بالا می‌آمد.



n.

level

['levl]

سطح

❖ A level is a point on a scale that measures something.

➤ Please check the level of the temperature.

➤ لطفا سطح درجه حرارت را بررسی کنید.



adj.

lone

[loʊn]

تنها

❖ If someone or something is lone, they are the only one of that kind.

➤ A lone man walked along the street.

➤ مردی تنها در امتداد خیابان قدم زد.



n.

puddle

['pʌdl]

گودال آب

❖ A puddle is a pool of liquid on the ground.

➤ When the ice melted, it formed a puddle.

➤ وقتی یخ آب شد، یک گودال آب تشکیل داد.



n.

response

[ri'spa:ns]

پاسخ

❖ A response is the answer to a question.

➤ He asked if I was sad. My response was "No".

➤ از من پرسید که آیا ناراحت هستم یا نه. پاسخ من "نه" بود.



n.

season

['si:zn]

فصل



❖ A season is a time of the year: spring, summer, fall or winter.

➤ Fall is a warm season while winter is very cold.

➤ پاییز یک فصل گرم است، در حالی که زمستان خیلی سرد است.

n.

solution

[sə'lu:ʃn]

راه حل



❖ A solution is a way to solve a problem.

➤ There are many problems. We need solutions.

➤ مشکلات زیادی وجود دارد. ما به راه حل هایی نیاز داریم.

v.

waste

[weɪst]

هدر رفتن، تلف کردن، هدر دادن



❖ To waste means to carelessly use something all up.

➤ Turn off the water so you don't waste it.

➤ آب را ببندید تا هدر نرود.

conj.

whether

['weðər]

که آیا



❖ You use whether when you must choose between two things.

➤ I could not decide whether to go left or right.

➤ نتوانستم تصمیم بگیرم که آیا به چپ بروم یا راست.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right definition for the given word.

- available
a. to answer
b. to win
c. to decide
d. able to get
- level
a. a point on a scale
b. with much light
c. different
d. alone
- appreciate
a. to go away
b. to have fun to show something is special
c. to use little of
d. to know why something is important
- season
a. a pool of liquid
b. a part of the year
c. a high area of land
d. to move easily and continuously
- solution
a. straight ahead
b. to show choice between two things
c. reasonable or in a right way
d. a way to solve a problem

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- His final offer was very reasonable.
f _____
- Don't throw it in the trash without using all of it.
wa _____
- The rabbit will go away if you get too close.
dis _____
- He asked if I liked new movies or old movies.
wh _____
- You must decide what to do next.
d _____

Exercise 2

Part A Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

hill appreciate puddles response solution

1. That _____ is too high to climb.
2. We must find a _____ to the difficult problem.
3. I asked you a question. What is your _____?
4. The rain formed _____ on the road.
5. Do you _____ the thought that went into the gifts you got?

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. Every New Year's Eve, we _____.
 a. celebrate with friends b. check the level of the day
2. I put on my sunglasses because _____.
 a. the sun was so bright b. a lone man stood on the road
3. Do you want chicken, _____?
 a. whether it happens or not b. or do you want something else
4. If we try hard, we can _____.
 a. beat the other team b. waste our time
5. Let's turn around and go back, _____.
 a. not forward b. to the last season

The Race for Water

There was a town next to a river. The people there had a lot of water. But they **wasted** it. That made the Sky angry. It said, "If you waste water, I will take it away from you." But the people didn't listen.

When the **season** changed from spring to summer, the clouds **disappeared**. The **bright** sun was hot and made the river dry. There was no water **available**. People asked, "When will the rain fall?"

The Sky's **response** was, "You don't **appreciate** water. You waste it, and now I will never make rain again."

A boy **determined** that this wasn't **fair**. He thought of a **solution**. He asked the Sky to race him. He said, "If I get to the top of that **hill** before your rain can form **puddles**, you must fill our river."

The Sky laughed. "Little boy, I am the Sky. I am above everything **else**. You cannot **beat** me." But the boy knew he would win.

When the race began, the boy ran **forward**. The Sky started raining on the hill. But puddles did not form there. When it rained on the hill, the water went down.

The Sky kept raining. The water **flowed** down into the river. When the boy reached the top of the hill, the river was full. The people began to **celebrate**. It was the highest **level** the river had ever been at before.

The Sky was angry. "A boy can't beat me! I won't fill your river," it said.

Now the boy laughed. "It doesn't matter **whether** you want to fill it or not," he said. "You already did." The Sky looked at the full river.

"You tricked me," it said. It asked the people, "Do you appreciate water now?"

"Yes," they said. "We won't waste it."

That is how a **lone** boy saved his town and won the race for water.





مسابقه برای آب

شهری در کنار رودخانه‌ای بود. مردم آنجا آب زیادی داشتند. اما آن را هدر می‌دادند. باعث خشم آسمان شد. آسمان گفت "اگر آب را هدر بدید، آن را از شما خواهم گرفت" اما مردم گوش ندادند. وقتی که فصل از بهار به تابستان تغییر کرد، ابرها ناپدید شدند.

خوشید درختان داغ بود و رودخانه را خشک کرد. هیچ آبی در دسترس نبود. مردم پرسیدند "کی بارون میاد؟" پاسخ آسمان این بود "شما قدر آب را نمی‌دانید." آن را هدر می‌دهید، و من حالا دیگر هرگز باران نخواهم بارید." یک پسر به این نتیجه رسید که این عادلانه نیست. او چاره‌ای اندیشید. از آسمان خواست که با او مسابقه دهد.

او گفت "اگه قبل از اینکه بارون تو بتونه گودال آب درست کنه من به بالای آن تپه برسم، باید رودخونه‌ی مارو پر کنی" آسمان خندید "پسر کوچولو، من آسمانم. برتر از همه هستم. نمی‌تونی منو شکست بدی" اما پسر می‌دانست که پیروز خواهد شد.

وقتی مسابقه شروع شد، پسر رو به جلو دوید. آسمان شروع به باریدن بر روی تپه کرد. اما گودال‌ها آنجا ایجاد نشدند. وقتی که روی تپه باران آمد، آب پایین ریخت. آسمان به باران ادامه داد. آب به رودخانه ریخت. وقتی که پسر به بالای تپه رسید، رودخانه پر بود.

مردم شروع به خوشحالی کردند. این بالاترین سطح روخانه بود که تا آن زمان بود. آسمان عصبانی بود "یک پسر نمی‌تونه منو شکست بده! من رودخانه‌ی شما را پر نمی‌کنم" حالا پسر خندید.

پسر گفت: "فرقی نمی‌کنه بخوای پر کنی یا نکنی" "تو قبلاً این کار رو کرده‌ای" آسمان به رودخانه‌ی پر نگاه کرد. گفت: "تو من را فریب دادی"

از مردم پرسید: حالا قدر آب را می‌دانید؟ آنها گفتند: بله. آن را هدر نخواهیم داد.

اینطور بود که یک پسر به تنهایی توانست شهرش را نجات دهد و برنده‌ی مسابقه‌ی آب شود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A boy who swims in a river
 - b. People who celebrate at a party
 - c. A boy with the solution to a problem
 - d. People who learn to appreciate a hill
2. The river became dry when _____.
 - a. the water went somewhere else
 - b. the bright sun became very hot
 - c. the people found available water nearby
 - d. the season changed from summer to spring
3. How did the boy save the town?
 - a. He made the clouds disappear.
 - b. He beat the rain to the top of the hill.
 - c. He moved forward faster than the sun.
 - d. He promised not to waste any more water.
4. What was the last thing the Sky did in the story?
 - a. It raced a lone boy to the top of the hill.
 - b. It saw the river at its highest level.
 - c. It asked the people for a response about water.
 - d. It determined the people wasted too much water.
5. What did the boy say when he reached the top of the hill?



v.

argue

[ˈɑːrg]

بحث کردن

- ❖ To argue is to angrily speak to someone because you do not agree.
- We argued about where to go for dinner.

➤ ما در مورد اینکه کجا برای شام برویم، بحث کردیم.



v.

communicate

[kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt]

گفتگو کردن، ارتباط برقرار کردن

- ❖ To communicate is to give information by talking, writing, etc.
- I communicated with Paul about his new ideas.

➤ با پاول، درباره ایده‌های جدیدش صحبت کردم.



n.

crowd

[kraʊd]

جمعیت

- ❖ A crowd is a large group of people.
- A large crowd had gathered on the street to see the accident.

➤ جمعیت کثیری در خیابان جمع شده بودند که آن حادثه را ببینند.



v.

depend

[dɪˈpend]

بستگی داشتن، وابسته بودن

- ❖ To depend on someone or something is to need them.
- Children depend on their parents for many things.

➤ بچه‌ها برای بسیاری از چیزها به والدین خود وابسته هستند.



n.

dish

[dɪʃ]

ظرف، بشقاب



❖ A dish is a plate.

➤ She put a clean white dish on the table.

➤ ظرف تمیز سفیدی را روی میز گذاشت.

adj.

empty

['empti]

خالی



❖ If something is empty, it does not have anything in it.

➤ My gas tank was almost empty, so I couldn't drive my car very long.

➤ باک بنزین من تقریباً خالی بود، بنابراین نتوانستم با ماشینم خیلی طولانی رانندگی کنم.

adj.

exact

[ɪg'zækt]

دقیق



❖ If something is exact, it is just the right amount.

➤ Please use the exact amount of sugar for the cake.

➤ لطفا مقدار دقیق شکر را برای کیک به کار ببرید.

adj.

fresh

[freʃ]

تازه



❖ If something is fresh, it is new.

➤ I just bought these oranges. They are very fresh.

➤ من تازه این پرتقال ها را خریدم. آنها بسیار تازه هستند.



v.

gather

[ˈgæðər]

جمع کردن، جمع آوری کردن

- ❖ To gather is to collect several things usually from different places.
- Sam gathered some flowers for his mother.

➤ سام چند گل برای مادرش جمع کرد.



v.

indicate

[ˈɪndɪkeɪt]

نشان دادن

- ❖ To indicate means to show, point or make something clear.
 - He pointed to his eyes to indicate where he had hurt himself.
- به چشمانش اشاره کرد تا نشان دهد که به کجا صدمه زده بود.



n.

item

[ˈaɪtəm]

وسیله، آیتم، گزینه

- ❖ An item is a thing that you buy or sell.
- I have many items for school in my bag.

➤ من وسایل زیادی برای مدرسه در کیفم دارم.



v.

offer

[ˈɒ:fər]

پیشنهاد دادن

- ❖ To offer is to present someone with something.
- He offered me the keys to his car.

➤ او کلیدهای ماشین خود را به من پیشنهاد داد.



n.

price

[praɪs]

قیمت



- ❖ The price of something is how much it costs.
- What is the price of this item?

➤ قیمت این کالا چقدر است؟

n.

product

['prɑːd]

محصول



- ❖ A product is something that is made.
- My sister has many beauty products in her room.

➤ خواهرم محصولات زیبایی زیادی در اتاقش دارد.

n.

property

['prɑːpərti]

مال، دارایی



- ❖ property is something that someone owns.
- The house is now my property.

➤ خانه اکنون مال من است.

v.

purchase

['pɜːrtʃəs]

خریداری کردن



- ❖ To purchase something is to buy it.
- I recently purchased a new car.

➤ اخیراً یک ماشین جدید خریداری کردم.



v.

recommend [ˌrekə'mend

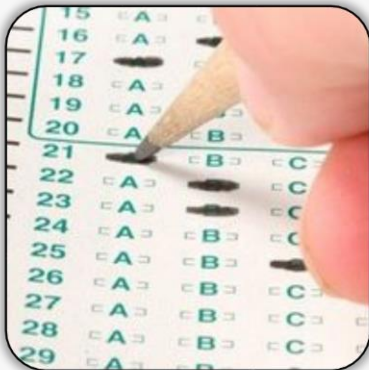
توصیه کردن

]

❖ To recommend something is to say that someone should do it.

➤ My doctor recommended that I get some exercise.

➤ پزشک من توصیه کرده است که کمی ورزش کنم.



v.

select [sɪ'lekt]

انتخاب کردن

❖ To select something is to choose it.

➤ I hope that I selected the right answers on the test.

➤ امیدوارم که پاسخ‌های درست را در آزمون انتخاب کرده باشم.



n.

tool [tu:l]

ابزار، وسیله

❖ A tool is something that helps you do a task.

➤ We used a tool to fix the window.

➤ ما از یک ابزار برای تعمیر پنجره استفاده کردیم.



v.

treat [tri:t]

رفتار کردن

❖ To treat is to act in a certain way toward someone.

➤ The cats treated the mouse very nicely.

➤ گربه‌ها با موش خیلی خوب رفتار کردند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. empty
 - a. in your mind
 - b. not containing anything
 - c. easy to see
 - d. sick
2. depend
 - a. to move forward
 - b. to jump
 - c. to need someone or something
 - d. to look at something
3. price
 - a. a sweet candy
 - b. how much something costs
 - c. a music show
 - d. a school
4. select
 - a. to change
 - b. to keep doing something
 - c. to choose
 - d. to fight
5. item
 - a. a path
 - b. someone who keeps the law
 - c. a thing
 - d. a place to watch a show
6. tool
 - a. something you study
 - b. a group of players
 - c. a loud noise
 - d. something that helps you do a task
7. crowd
 - a. a group of people
 - b. a flat piece of wood
 - c. 100 years
 - d. a sign
8. dish
 - a. something no one knows
 - b. an answer
 - c. a grown person
 - d. a plate
9. communicate
 - a. to shut
 - b. to go to where you can't be seen
 - c. to talk
 - d. to leave
10. exact
 - a. not on the top
 - b. not light
 - c. from a place nearby
 - d. the perfect amount

Exercise 2

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- I suggest the oranges. They are delicious!
reco _____
- Do not disagree with your sister.
ar _____
- The company's things that it makes are very useful in the kitchen.
pr _____
- We can talk by phone.
com _____
- Why don't you present her a fair price for her house?
of _____

Part B Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

treated

select

fresh

dish

gathered

Today, my friend 1 _____ me so nicely. First, he gave me some beautiful 2 _____ flowers. Next, he asked me to 3 _____ any CD from the store, and he bought it for me! Later when we got home, he made me close my eyes. When I opened them, I saw a great meal on a pretty 4 _____. There was even a vase full of flowers that he had 5 _____ from earlier that day. I will never forget this wonderful day.

The Little Red Chicken

A little red chicken had a store in a small town. She sold many different **items** to people in the town. The people loved her **products**.

One day, a cat came to her **property**. He saw the sign that **indicated** where the chicken's store was located. He wanted to **purchase** bread, but the chicken's store was almost **empty**. She had only a bag of wheat.*

"You can use the wheat to make bread," the chicken said.

"No, I don't want to work," the cat said. "I just want to buy bread." The cat became angry and left the store.

Later, the little red chicken saw the cat in a **crowd**.

"I will help you make the bread," she said.

But the cat **treated** her badly. He did not even **communicate** with her.

He did not want to do any work.

So the chicken decided to make the bread. She **selected** the **exact** amount of wheat to make **fresh** bread. She used a stone to pound the wheat to get it ready. Soon, her bread was ready.

The cat came and saw the bread on a **dish**.

"Give me some of your bread," he said.

"No," said the little red chicken. "You did not help me make the bread. So you shall not have any to eat."

The cat **argued** with the chicken. He tried to **offer** a **price** for it.

But the little red chicken did not want to sell her bread.

"Don't **depend** on others to do work for you," said the little red chicken.

"Then how will I get bread?" the cat asked.

"I **recommend** doing some work," said the little red chicken. "Use a **tool** to plant your own wheat. When it grows big, you can **gather** it and make your own bread. You need to learn to do work for what you want."

*wheat – a type of plant used to make bread





جوجهی قرمز کوچک

جوجهی قرمز کوچکی فروشگاه‌های در شهری کوچک داشت. کالاهای بسیار متفاوتی به مردم شهر می‌فروخت. مردم عاشق محصولات او بودند. روزی، گربه‌ای وارد ملکش شد. او تابلویی دید که نشان می‌داد فروشگاه جوجه کجا قرار گرفته بود. می‌خواست نان بخرد، ولی فروشگاه جوجه تقریباً تعطیل بود. او فقط یک کیسه گندم داشت.

جوجه گفت "می‌تونی از گندم برای نون درست کردن استفاده کنی" گربه گفت "نه نمی‌خوام کار کنم." "فقط می‌خوام نون بخرم" گربه عصبانی شد و فروشگاه را ترک کرد. بعداً، مرغ قرمز کوچک گربه را در جمعیت (شلوگی) دید. او گفت "کمکت می‌کنم که نون درست کنی"

اما گربه به طرز بدی با او رفتار کرد. حتی با او گفتگو هم نکرد. او نمی‌خواست هیچ کاری انجام دهد. پس جوجه تصمیم گرفت نان را درست کند. مقدار دقیقی گندم انتخاب کرد تا نان تازه درست کند. از سنگ برای کوبیدن گندم و آماده کردن آن استفاده کرد.

خیلی زود، نان او آماده بود. گربه برگشت و نان را روی یک بشقاب دید. گفت: "کمی از نونت رو بهم بده." "جوجه قرمز کوچک گفت: "نه". "تو به من کمک نکردی که نون درست کنم. بنابراین چیزی برای خوردن نخواهی داشت." گربه با مرغ بحث کرد.

سعی کرد که قیمتی برای نان پیشنهاد بدهد. اما جوجه کوچک قرمز نمی‌خواست نان خود را بفروشد. جوجه قرمز کوچک گفت: "خودت رو به دیگران وابسته نکن که بخوان واست کار انجام بدن." گربه پرسید: "پس چطوری نون بدست بیارم؟" جوجه قرمز کوچک گفت: "توصیه می‌کنم یک کم کار کنی."

"از یک ابزار برای کاشت گندم خودت استفاده کن. وقتی که بزرگ شد، می‌تونی جمعش کنی و نون خودت رو درست کنی. باید یاد بگیری که برای رسیدن به چیزی که می‌خواهی کار کنی"

* گندم: نوعی گیاه برای درست کردن نان.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the story about?
 - a. A chicken finding a friend to depend on
 - b. A chicken making bread out of wheat
 - c. Why a cat's store did not have any items
 - d. The exact amount of wheat needed to make bread

2. What did the cat do when the chicken asked him to help make the bread?
 - a. He did not communicate with her.
 - b. He argued with the little red chicken.
 - c. He said that he would gather all the things needed to make the bread.
 - d. He treated her very nicely.

3. How did the cat find the chicken's store?
 - a. He saw tools being sold outside of the store.
 - b. He saw a stone with the store's name.
 - c. His friend told him to purchase bread there.
 - d. He saw a sign that indicated her property.

4. What did the cat do when he saw the fresh bread?
 - a. He selected the product for himself.
 - b. He tried to buy some of it for a price.
 - c. He brought a crowd of friends with him to eat.
 - d. He asked why her store was empty.

5. What did the little red chicken recommend the cat to do to have some bread?



adj.

alive

[ə'laɪv]

زنده

- ❖ If someone or something is alive, they are not dead.
- My grandparents are still alive even though they are over 90.
- پدر و مادر بزرگ من هنوز زنده هستند، اگرچه بیش از ۹۰ سال سن دارند.



n.

bone

[bəʊn]

استخوان

- ❖ A bone is a hard part of the body.
- I brought home a nice bone for my dog.
- برای سگم یک استخوان خوب به خانه آوردم.



v.

bother

['bɑ:ð]

زحمت دادن، دردسر دادن

- ❖ To bother is to make the effort to do something.
- No one bothered to wash the dishes today.
- امروز هیچ کس به خود زحمت شستن ظرفها را نداد.



n.

captain

['kæptɪn]

ناخدا، کاپیتان

- ❖ A captain is the person who leads a ship or airplane.
- The captain sailed his ship to Australia.
- ناخدا، کشتی خود را به طرف استرالیا حرکت داد.



n.

conclusion

[kən'klu:ʒn]

نتیجه، پایان



- ❖ The conclusion of something is the final part of it.
- At the conclusion for the race, the spectators cheered for the winner.
- در پایان مسابقه، تماشاچیان برای برنده هورا کشیدند.

n.

doubt

[daʊt]

شک، تردید



- ❖ doubt is a feeling of not being sure.
- I have doubt that the story is true.

➤ شک دارم که داستان واقعی باشد.

v.

explore

[ɪk'splɔ:r]

کاوش کردن، جستجو کردن



- ❖ To explore is to look for new places.
- He wants to explore the world and see new things.
- او می‌خواهد دنیا را کاوش کند و چیزهای جدیدی ببیند.

adj.

foreign

['fɔ:rən]

خارجی



- ❖ If something is foreign, it is from a different country.
- Mexican food is a popular foreign food.

➤ غذای مکزیکی یکی از غذاهای محبوب خارجی است.



adj.

glad

[glæd]

خوشحال



- ❖ If you are glad, you are happy.
- I am glad you came to my party.

➤ خوشحالم که شما به مهمانی من آمدید.

adv.

however

[haʊ'evər]

با این حال، گرچه، هر چند



- ❖ however means despite or not being influenced by something.
- She is a great cook. however, she never had professional lessons.

➤ او آشپز خوبی است. اما، هیچ وقت به صورت حرفه ای دوره ندیده است.

n.

injustice

[ɪn'dʒʌstɪs]

بی عدالتی



- ❖ injustice is a lack of fairness or justice.
- Putting an innocent person in jail is an act of injustice.

➤ قرار دادن یک فرد بی گناه در زندان یک عمل بی عدالتی است.

adj.

international

[,ɪn]

بین المللی



- ❖ If something is international, it involves more than one country.
- The United Nations is a powerful international organization.

➤ سازمان ملل متحد، یک سازمان بین المللی قدرتمند است.



n.

lawyer

['lɔɪər]

وکیل

- ❖ A lawyer works with the law and represents people in court.
- The lawyer left the courthouse after the judge made her decision.
- وکیل بعد از اینکه قاضی تصمیمش را گرفت، از دادگاه بیرون رفت.



v.

mention

['menʃn]

ذکر کردن، اشاره کردن

- ❖ To mention something is to talk about it.
- The doctors mentioned the problems that the patient was having.
- پزشکان به مشکلاتی که بیمار داشت، اشاره کردند.



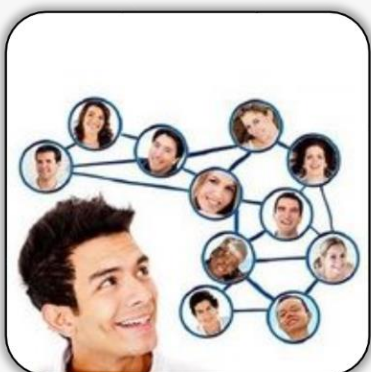
n.

policy

['pɑ:lɪ]

سیاست

- ❖ A policy is a rule.
- He told us that his policy was to put customers first.
- او به ما گفت که سیاست او این است که مشتریان را در اولویت قرار دهد.



adj.

social

['səʊʃl]

ep.

اجتماعی

- ❖ If something is social, it is about many people in a community.
- People should come together and fix the world's social problems.
- مردم باید گرد هم آیند و مشکلات اجتماعی جهان را برطرف کنند.



n.

speech

[spi:tʃ]

سخنرانی، صحبت

- ❖ A speech is something said to a group of people.
- She gave a speech to the class.

➤ او برای کلاس سخنرانی کرد.



n.

staff

[stæf]

پرسنل

- ❖ A staff is a group of people working together in a company.
 - My dad has a staff of four people to help him at the office.
- پدر من، چهار نفر پرسنل دارد که به او در اداره کمک می کنند.



prep.

toward

[tə:rd]

به سمت، به طرف

- ❖ If you go toward something, you go closer to it.
- Santa walked toward my house with a special tree.

➤ بابا نوئل با یک درخت مخصوص به طرف خانه من قدم زد.



n.

wood

[wʊd]

چوب

- ❖ wood is the thing that trees are made of.
- I put the pieces of wood in a pile.

➤ تکه های چوب را داخل کپه گذاشتم.



Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right definition for the given word.

- mention
a. to say b. to look at c. to not believe d. to be happy
- social
a. about many countries b. not dead
c. about many people d. about a different country
- lawyer
a. to be treated unfairly b. a person who works with the law
c. leader d. a part of the body
- however
a. the last part b. part of a tree
c. a rule d. despite something
- bother
a. to look for new places b. to make the effort to do something
c. to talk about something d. to not believe

Part B Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

wood

toward

policy

speech

staff

- My new desk is made of _____.
- Students must start class at 9:00 each morning. This is the school's _____.
- There are over 500 people on the hospital's _____.
- Go _____ the river, but stop before you get in the water!
- The president gave a _____ last night.

Exercise 2

Part A Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. He gave a talk to a group of people at the meeting.
spe _____
2. Did anyone make the effort to do their homework?
bo _____
3. The chair is made of the material trees are made of.
wo ____
4. The group of workers helped him with his work.
s _____
5. He is not dead; I saw him yesterday.
a _____

Part B Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

mentioned	however	policy	staff	speech
bothered	conclusion	injustice	bones	doubt

My teacher's name is Mrs. Smith. Yesterday, she gave a 1 _____ to our class. She said there was a new 2 _____ about the school diet. No one is allowed to eat cookies anymore! The school's 3 _____ decided that their students didn't eat healthily. They wanted students to improve their eating habits. Everyone will have to drink a cup of milk at lunch. She said milk gives our bodies stronger 4 _____. She also 5 _____ that sugar is bad for us. She said she had no 6 _____ that we would all feel better. We all thought that it was an 7 _____. But at the 8 _____ of class, she told us one more thing, "It was a joke!" 9 _____, no one thought that it was very funny. And no students 10 _____ to laugh.

Shipwrecked

Simon Yates was a **lawyer**. He helped many people. **However**, he was not a nice man. His **policy** was to help only rich people. He didn't **bother** about **social injustice**. He made a lot of money, but many people didn't like him. Even people on his **staff** didn't like him. They wanted bad things to happen to him. In fact, they were **glad** when he got into trouble.

Simon had a very bad day. He did many things wrong and lost his job. Soon, he didn't have any money. His wife, Mrs. Yates, began to have **doubts** about him. Simon wanted to start a new life. He planned to leave the country.

He **mentioned** his plan to the **captain** of a ship. The captain was **exploring** the world. The captain felt bad for Simon and said, "I will take you to **foreign** countries." They left the next day.

Near the **conclusion** of their **international** trip, the weather turned bad. A wave pushed Simon off the boat. But he was **alive**. He swam **toward** an island. After a long time he got there.

At first he was upset. He was lost and alone. "I'll never go home again," he thought. He had a lot of problems, but he survived. He built a house in a tree. He lived on a diet of fish. He made tools from **wood** and **bones**. He made a cup to drink rainwater.

Slowly he learned to be happy on the island. He swam every day. He had trouble sometimes, but he always found a way to fix the problem. Life was simple. He liked it.

Finally, people on a ship saw Simon on the island. They wanted to take him home. But Simon was happy. He gave them a long **speech** about life. He said he wanted to stay. He liked his new, simple life more than his old life.





کشتی شکسته

سایمن یتس وکیل بود. به بسیاری از افراد کمک می‌کرد. هرچند، آدم خوبی نبود. سیاست او این بود که فقط به ثروتمندان کمک کند. او به بی‌عدالتی اجتماعی اهمیت نمی‌داد. پول زیادی بدست می‌آورد، اما بسیاری از مردم علاقه‌ای به او نداشتند. حتی کارکنان او هم از اون خوششان نمی‌آمد.

آنها می‌خواستند اتفاقات بدی برای او بیفتد. درحقیقت، آنها خوشحال بودند وقتی که توی دردرس می‌افتاد. سایمون روز خیلی بدی داشت. اشتباهات زیادی مرتکب شد و شغلش را از دست داد. خیلی زود هیچ پولی نداشت. همسرش خانم یتس، کم کم به او شک کرد.

سایمون می‌خواست زندگی جدیدی را آغاز کند. برنامه ریخت که کشور را ترک کند. نقشه‌ی خود را به ناخدای کشتی گفت. کاپیتان داشت دنیا را می‌گشت. کاپیتان برای سایمون دلش سوخت و گفت: "تو رو به کشورهای خارجی می‌برم" روز بعد حرکت کردند. نزدیک به انتهای سفر بین‌المللی خود بودند که هوا بد شد.

موجی سایمون را از کشتی پرت کرد. اما زنده بود. به سمت جزیره‌ای شنا کرد. بعد از مدتی طولانی به آنجا رسید. اول ناراحت بود. گمشده و تنها بود. اندیشید "دیگه هرگز نمی‌تونم برم خونه." مشکلات زیادی داشت اما زنده ماند. خانه‌ای در یک درخت ساخت. با رژیم غذایی ماهی زندگی کرد. ابزارهایی از چوب و استخوان ساخت. فنجان‌ی برای خوردن آب باران ساخت.

کم کم یاد گرفت که در جزیره خوشحال باشد. هر روز شنا می‌کرد. بعضی وقت‌ها مشکلاتی داشت، اما همیشه راهی برای رفع مشکل پیدا می‌کرد. زندگی ساده بود. دوستش داشت. در نهایت، مردم یک کشتی سایمون را در جزیره دیدند.

می‌خواستند او را به خانه ببرند. اما سایمون خوشحال بود. او سخنرانی مفصلی در مورد زندگی کرد. گفت که می‌خواهد بماند. زندگی ساده‌ی جدید خود را بیشتر از زندگی قدیمی خود دوست داشت.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How the captain of a ship explored foreign places
 - b. How a lawyer stayed alive alone on an island
 - c. Why a man and a woman went on an international trip
 - d. Why it is a good policy to worry about social problems

2. Why does Simon not stay on the boat?
 - a. The staff do not like him.
 - b. He wants to swim toward an island.
 - c. A wave pushes him off the ship.
 - d. He does not like the diet of only fish.

3. How does Simon stay alive on the island?
 - a. He makes tools from bones and wood.
 - b. He makes clothes from a tree.
 - c. He eats food from the trees.
 - d. He uses a cup to drink seawater.

4. What did Simon mention in his speech?
 - a. He wanted to see Mrs. Yates.
 - b. He was unhappy to be alone.
 - c. He was glad to be on the island.
 - d. He had doubts about staying on the island.

5. What happens near the conclusion of Simon's trip?



v.

achieve

[ə'tʃi:v]

رسیدن، به دست آوردن

❖ To achieve something is to successfully do it after trying hard.

➤ I was happy that I could achieve my goal

➤ خوشحال بودم که می‌توانستم به هدفم برسم.



v.

advise

[əd'vaɪz]

مشاوره دادن، مشورت دادن، نصیحت کردن

❖ To advise someone is to tell them what to do.

➤ My mother often advises people about their money.

➤ مادرم اغلب به مردم درباره پولشان مشاوره می‌دهد.



adv.

already

[ɔ:l'reɪdi]

از قبل، پیش از این

❖ If something happens already, it happens before a certain time.

➤ It is already time for the movie to start. Let's go in.

➤ زمان شروع فیلم گذشته. بیا برویم داخل.



adj.

basic

['beɪsɪk]

ابتدایی، پایه ای، اساسی

❖ If something is basic, it is very simple or easy.

➤ I learned some basic English skills in school today.

➤ من امروز برخی مهارت‌های ابتدایی انگلیسی را در مدرسه یاد گرفتم.



n.

bit

[bit]

ذره، تکه

- ❖ A bit is a small amount of something.
- I ate a bit of chocolate before I went to bed.

➤ قبل از اینکه به تختخواب بروم، یک تکه شکلات خوردم.



v.

consider

[kən'sɪdər]

در نظر گرفتن، فکر کردن،

- ❖ To consider something means to think about it.
- Pete didn't like his job. He considered getting a new one.

➤ پیت کارش رو دوست نداشت. او به این فکر افتاد که کار جدیدی انجام دهد.



v.

destroy

[dɪ'strɔɪ]

از بین رفتن، خراب شدن، نابود شدن

- ❖ To destroy means to damage something so badly that it cannot be used.
- The glass was destroyed.

➤ شیشه نابود شده بود.



v.

entertain

[,en]

سرگرم کردن

- ❖ To entertain someone is to do something that they enjoy.
- The clown entertained the kids at the party.

➤ دلچک بچه ها را در میهمانی سرگرم کرد.



adj.

extra

[ˈɛkstrə]

اضافی

❖ If something is extra, it is more than what is needed.

➤ The squirrel had extra nuts for the winter.

➤ سنجاب برای زمستان آجیل اضافی داشت.



n.

goal

[ɡoʊl]

هدف

❖ A goal is something you work toward.

➤ Her goal was to become a doctor.

➤ هدف او پزشک شدن بود.



v.

lie

[laɪ]

دروغ گفتن

❖ To lie is to say or write something untrue to deceive someone.

➤ Whenever Pinocchio lied to his father, his nose grew.

➤ پینوکیو هر وقت به پدرش دروغ می گفت، بینی اش بزرگ می شد.



n.

meat

[mi:t]

گوشت

❖ meat is food made of animals.

➤ This piece of meat I'm eating tastes very good.

➤ این تکه گوشتی که من می خورم، خیلی خوب است.



n.

opinion

[ə'pɪnjən]

نظر، عقیده



- ❖ An opinion is a thought about a person or a thing.
- Meg told me her opinion of my story. She said it was not funny.
- مگ نظر خودش رو درباره داستاتم بهم گفت. گفت که اصلا خنده دار نیست.

adj.

real

['ri:əl]

واقعی، حقیقی



- ❖ If something is real, it actually exists.
- The handbag has a stamp on it, so it's real.
- کیف دستی رویش یک آرم دارد، پس واقعی (اصل) است.

v.

reflect

[rɪ'flekt]

منعکس کردن



- ❖ To reflect is when a surface sends back light, heat, sound or an image.
- Her face was reflected on the smooth glass.
- صورتش روی شیشه صاف منعکس شده بود.

v.

regard

[rɪ'gɑ:rd]

توجه کردن، نگاه کردن



- ❖ To regard someone or something is to think of them in a certain way.
- The boy regarded the girl as a good friend.
- پسر به آن دختر به عنوان یک دوست خوب نگاه می‌کرد.



v.

serve

[sɜ:rv]

سرو کردن، خدمت کردن

- ❖ To serve someone is to give them food or drinks.
- He served us our drinks quickly.

➤ او به سرعت نوشیدنی های ما را برایمان سرو کرد.



n.

vegetable

['vedʒtəbl]

سبزیجات

- ❖ A vegetable is a plant used as food.
- Carrots are my favorite vegetable.

➤ هویج، سبزی مورد علاقه من است.



n.

war

[wɔ:r]

جنگ

- ❖ A war is a big fight between two groups of people.
- Many young men died in the war.

➤ بسیاری از جوانان در جنگ جان باختند.



adj.

worth

[wɜ:rθ]

ارزش، ارزش داشتن

- ❖ If something is worth an amount of money, it costs that amount.
- Our house is worth a lot of money.

➤ خانه ما ارزش زیادی دارد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. achieve
a. to think about something
b. to get something
c. to tell someone what to do
d. to break into pieces
2. reflect
a. to tell someone what to do
b. to think about something
c. to damage something very badly
d. to send back an image
3. opinion
a. a thought
b. a plant
c. an animal
d. a fight
4. already
a. not made up
b. before a certain time
c. more than is needed
d. very simple
5. goal
a. a thought about someone or something
b. a fight between groups of people
c. something you work toward
d. a small amount of something

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

meat

war

serve

regard

destroy

1. Chicken, pork, and beef are all kinds of _____.
2. Don't drop the glass bowl. You will _____ it.
3. Restaurants often _____ tea and coffee with breakfast.
4. Many teachers _____ their students as smart kids.
5. It is sad when two countries start a _____ with each other.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. A **basic** tool has many parts.
___ b. If a toy is **worth** \$1, it costs \$1.
2. ___ a. Anyone can pet a **real** dog.
___ b. If a man has **extra** socks, he does not have enough.
3. ___ a. It is not smart to **lie** to your parents.
___ b. If a woman **considers** leaving, she doesn't want to go.
4. ___ a. If a bike is **worth** \$50, it costs much less.
___ b. When you eat **vegetables**, you are eating plants.
5. ___ a. When a teacher **advices** her students, she asks them what they want to do.
___ b. Some people **entertain** others by telling funny stories.
6. ___ a. If a boy **considers** studying, he is thinking about doing it.
___ b. Many people like making new types of **vegetables**.
7. ___ a. A **basic** answer is a simple one.
___ b. A **bit** of food is a lot of it.
8. ___ a. If a girl brings **extra** paper, she has more than she needs.
___ b. People **entertain** others to make them sad.
9. ___ a. People believe others who **lie** often.
___ b. When you **advise** your friend, you tell him what to do.
10. ___ a. A **real** story never happened.
___ b. A **bit** of paper is a small piece.

The Seven Cities of Gold

Many years ago, a Spanish officer named Coronado heard the story of seven great cities. “The walls of these cities are made of gold,” his friends told him. “The people eat **meat** from golden plates and dress in nice clothes,” they said. They called these cities the Seven Cities of Gold. Were the cities **real**? Coronado never **considered** asking his friends.

Coronado thought to himself, “The things in these cities must be **worth** a lot of money.” So he went to find the Seven Cities of Gold. He took along three hundred men, many horses, and **extra** food. They headed west. Coronado wanted to **achieve** his **goal** very badly.

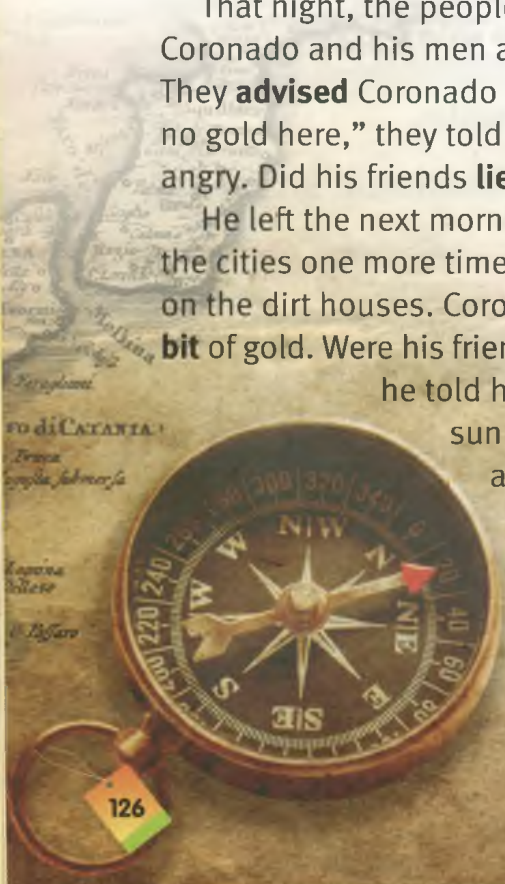
Coronado and his men rode for many days. Then they saw some cities. “We found the Seven Cities of Gold!” his men yelled, but Coronado wasn’t happy. He had a different **opinion**. “These can’t be the Seven Cities of Gold,” he said. “Look, they’re made of dirt!”

Coronado was right. The cities weren’t bright and golden. They were dirty and brown. The people didn’t eat meat from golden plates. They ate **vegetables** from regular bowls. They wore the most **basic** clothes.

Coronado **regarded** the cities as ugly places. “What happened to the cities of gold?” he thought. “Did someone **destroy** them? Was there a **war**? Did someone **already** come and take the gold?”

That night, the people of the cities **entertained** Coronado and his men and **served** them food. They **advised** Coronado to go home. “There is no gold here,” they told him. Coronado was angry. Did his friends **lie** to him?

He left the next morning. He looked back at the cities one more time. The sun **reflected** light on the dirt houses. Coronado thought he saw a **bit** of gold. Were his friends right after all? “No,” he told himself. “It’s just the sun.” Then he turned away and went home.





هفت شهر طلا

سال‌ها پیش، افسر اسپانیایی به نام کورونادو داستان هفت شهر بزرگ را شنید. دوستانش به او گفتند: "دیوارهای این شهرها از طلا ساخته شده‌اند". آنها گفتند: "مردم از بشقاب‌های طلا گوشت می‌خورند و لباس‌های زیبا و خوب می‌پوشند". آن‌ها این شهرها را هفت شهر طلا می‌نامند.

آیا شهرها واقعی بودند؟ کورونادو هرگز در نظر نگرفت که این سوال را از دوستانش بپرسد. با خود اندیشید: "چیزهایی که در این شهر هستند باید ارزش پولی زیادی داشته باشند." بنابراین رفت تا هفت شهر طلا را پیدا کند.

سپید مرد، اسب و غذای اضافی با خود برد. به سمت غرب رفتند. کورونادو خیلی سخت به دنبال دست یابی به هدف خود بود. او و مردانش روزهای زیادی را راندند. بعد شهرهایی را دیدند. مردان او فریاد زدند: هفت شهر طلا را پیدا کردیم، اما کورونادو خوشحال نبود. او نظری دیگر داشت. گفت "این‌ها نمی‌توانند هفت شهر طلا باشند. ببینید، از خاک ساخته شدند!"

کورونادو درست می‌گفت. شهرها روشن و طلایی نبودند. آنها خاکی و قهوه‌ای بودند. مردم از بشقاب‌های طلا گوشت نمی‌خوردند. از بشقاب‌های معمولی سبزی می‌خوردند. آنها ساده‌ترین لباس‌ها را می‌پوشیدند. کورونادو شهرها را مثل کاخ‌های زشت دید. با خود فکر کرد: "چه بلایی بر سر شهرهای طلا آمده؟ آیا کسی نابودشان کرده؟ آیا جنگی بوده؟ آیا کسی قبلاً آمده و طلاها رو برده؟"

آن شب، مردم شهرها از کونورادو و یارانش را سرگرم کردند و به آن‌ها غذا دادند. به او توصیه کردند که به خانه بازگردد. آنها به او گفتند: "هیچ طلایی اینجا نیست" کونورادو عصبانی بود. آیا دوستانش به او دروغ گفتند؟ صبح روز بعد آنجا را ترک کرد.

یک بار دیگر به شهرها نگاه کرد. خورشید، نور بر خانه‌های خاکی بازتاب می‌کرد. کونورادو فکر کرد که کمی طلا دیده است. آیا بالاخره دوستان او درست می‌گفتند؟ او با خودش گفت: "نه. این فقط خورشید است. سپس برگشت و به خانه رفت."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A man who achieves his goal
 - b. An officer who looks for cities of gold
 - c. Men who destroy cities
 - d. People who entertain and serve
2. What did Coronado NOT consider asking his friends?
 - a. How much money the cities were worth
 - b. If the people of the cities ate meat
 - c. If the Seven Cities of Gold were real
 - d. How much extra food to take west
3. Why was Coronado unhappy when he saw the cities?
 - a. They were not made of gold.
 - b. They were at war with each other.
 - c. Someone destroyed them.
 - d. He had already been to the cities.
4. What did the people of the cities advise Coronado to do?
 - a. Eat basic vegetables
 - b. Go home
 - c. Regard the cities as dirty places
 - d. Talk about his opinion of the cities
5. What did Coronado do when he thought he saw a bit of gold on the houses?



v.

appear

[ə'pɪr]

به نظر رسیدن

- ❖ To appear is to seem.
- She appeared to be sad. She was crying.

➤ او به نظر می‌رسید که غمگین است. داشت گریه می‌کرد.



n.

base

[beɪs]

پایه، اساس

- ❖ The base is the bottom of something.
- The base of the table has three legs.

➤ پایه میز سه تا پا دارد.



n.

brain

[breɪn]

مغز

- ❖ The brain is the organ in your head that lets you think.
- You must use your brain to solve the problem.

➤ باید از مغزت برای حل کردن مشکل استفاده کنی.



n.

career

[kə'riː]

فعالیت کاری، حرفه، شغل

- ❖ A career is a job that you do for a large part of your life.
- He was in the hospitality business for most of his career.

➤ او بیشتر فعالیت کاری خود را در هتلداری گذارنده بود.



n.

clerk

[klɜːrk]

کارمند، منشی، کارمند دفتری

❖ A clerk is a type of worker. clerks in a store help customers.

➤ The clerk added up her bill for the groceries.

➤ کارمند صورت حساب خود را برای خرید خواربار جمع زد.



n.

effort

['efɔːt]

تلاش، سعی، کوشش

❖ effort is hard work or an attempt to do something.

➤ He always puts a lot of effort into his studies.

➤ او همیشه تلاش زیادی برای مطالعات خود می کند.



v.

enter

['entəː]

وارد شدن، داخل شدن

❖ To enter a place is to go into it.

➤ Two guards greeted me as I entered the front door.

➤ وقتی وارد اتاق جلویی شدم، دو نفر نگهبان با من سلام و احوال پرسى کردند.



adj.

excellent

['eksələnt]

عالی، بسیار خوب

❖ When something is excellent, it is very good.

➤ I got an excellent score on my school test.

➤ من نمره‌ای عالی در امتحان مدرسه‌ام گرفتم.



n.

hero

['hɪrəʊ]

قهرمان



- ❖ A hero is a brave person who does things to help others.
- To children, the man in the blue and red costume was a real hero.
- آن مرد با لباس آبی و قرمز، برای کودکان یک قهرمان واقعی بود.

v.

hurry

['hʌ:ri]

عجله داشتن، در عجله بودن



- ❖ To hurry is to do something quickly.
- I hurried home on my bike.

➤ با شتاب به طرف خانه دوچرخه سواری کردم.

v.

inform

[ɪn'fɔ:rm]

به اطلاع رساندن، اطلاع دادن



- ❖ To inform someone is to tell them about something.
- I called and informed her about my idea.

➤ زنگ زدم و در مورد ایده خودم بهش اطلاع دادم.

adv.

later

['leɪtə]

دیرتر، بعد



- ❖ later means after the present, expected, or usual time.
- She missed the train, so she'll arrive a little later than expected.

➤ او قطار را از دست داد، بنابراین کمی دیرتر از آنچه انتظار داشت به آنجا خواهد رسید.



v.

leave

[li:v]

ترک کردن، رفتن

- ❖ To leave means to go away from someone or something.
- He packed his bag and was ready to leave for home.
- وسایلش را جمع کرد و آماده رفتن به خانه بود.



v.

locate

['loukeɪt]

پیدا کردن

- ❖ To locate something is to find it.
- I could not locate my keys in the house.
- من نتوانستم کلیدهایم را در خانه پیدا کنم.



n.

nurse

[nɜ:rs]

پرستار

- ❖ A nurse is a person who helps sick people in the hospital.
- A nurse helped me get better.
- یک پرستار به من کمک کرد که بهتر شوم.



n.

operation

[,ɑ:p]

جراحی، عمل جراحی

- ❖ An operation is when a doctor replaces or removes something in the body.
- The operation on my arm was a success.
- جراحی روی بازوی من موفقیت آمیز بود.



n.

pain

[peɪn]

درد



- ❖ pain is the feeling that you have when you are hurt.
- His head was full of pain.

➤ سرش پر از درد بود.

v.

refuse

[rɪ'fju:z]

خودداری کردن، رد کردن، امتناع کردن



- ❖ To refuse something is to say "no" to it.
- The dog refused to play with the cat.

➤ سگ از بازی با گربه خودداری کرد.

conj.

though

[ðəʊ]

اگرچه، با وجود اینکه، گرچه، ولی



- ❖ though is used when the second idea makes the first seem surprising.
- though he was overweight, he liked to be active.

➤ اگرچه او اضافه وزن داشت، اما دوست داشت که فعال باشد.

adj.

various

['ver]

مختلف، متنوع



- ❖ If something is various, there are many types of it.
- She owned shoes of various styles.

➤ او کفش هایی با سبک های مختلف داشت.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with the right words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

locate

hero

pain

hurried

clerk

I went to the video store last night. I wanted to 1_____ a DVD. I didn't know the name of the movie, so I told the 2_____ what it was about. I told her there was a 3_____ who could fly and nothing caused him 4_____. She went to the shelf and brought it to me. Then I 5_____ home to watch it.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. When I went to the hospital, _____.
 a. the nurse gave me medicine
 b. all the doctors and nurses will leave
2. He arrived on time, but Sarah won't be here _____.
 a. until much later
 b. leaves in the morning
3. I really like that writer. He wrote an _____.
 a. effort of a story
 b. excellent book
4. After I dropped the book on my foot, _____.
 a. I was in pain
 b. I hurried home
5. He did not want to go to the party. He _____.
 a. appeared ready to go
 b. refused to get into the car

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Because the **base** of the lamp was broken, it could not stand up.
___ b. I decided to **leave** early so that I could be late.
2. ___ a. The roof was at the **base** of the house.
___ b. I had an **operation** to fix my broken nose.
3. ___ a. The **various** movies were all the same.
___ b. I like dogs, **though** I don't like most animals.
4. ___ a. I will **leave** early in the morning to catch my plane.
___ b. My friends and I decided to throw an **operation** for my sister.
5. ___ a. **Though** I was rich, I bought a lot of cars.
___ b. I made an **effort** to get the job done.
6. ___ a. He never used his **brain** when he faced problems!
___ b. The job **appeared** very quickly.
7. ___ a. I **entered** the house through the door.
___ b. I threw the **effort** with all my might.
8. ___ a. She **appeared** very happy on her birthday.
___ b. People use their **brains** to exercise.
9. ___ a. I **informed** him of the new rules.
___ b. I **entered** out of the room.
10. ___ a. The rock **informed** me that I was too heavy.
___ b. There were **various** things to do at the event.

Katy

I first met 8-year-old Katy on a rainy afternoon. I was a **nurse** at a hospital. The **clerk** at the desk told me about Katy. She was there because she felt a lot of **pain**. The doctors **located** a problem at the **base** of her **brain**. I knew she was special, even before she got better. I'll always remember Katy as a **hero**.

When I **entered** Katy's room, she was not in her bed. She was in a chair next to Tommy, a little boy. **Though** Katy did not feel well, she was playing with Tommy and his toys. It took a lot of **effort** for her just to sit in the chair. But she played with Tommy because it made him happy.

Katy was always smiling and never **appeared** to be in pain. She **refused** to just lie in bed. One day I found her painting a picture. Later, she gave it to one of the older patients. Another day she went outside to get flowers for another sick little girl. Katy made everyone smile.

The doctors **hurried** to fix the problem in Katy's brain. The **operation** was successful! The doctors **informed** the hospital staff of the good news. Katy was fine. She soon felt **excellent**. She got better and was able to **leave** the hospital a month **later**.

I have had a long **career** as a nurse. I have met many patients. However, I have never met another girl like Katy. Even after she got well, she still came to the hospital. She played **various** games with the young patients. She read many books to the older patients. Katy's kind heart helped her get better so quickly. She is a hero to me and everyone else at the hospital.





کتی

من کتی 8 ساله را اولین بار در یک بعدازظهر بارانی دیدم. در یک بیمارستان پرستار بودم. منشی پشت‌میز دربارهی کتی به من گفت. چون درد زیادی داشت در آنجا بستری شده بود. پزشک‌ها مشکلی را در پایهی مغز او شناسایی کردند. می‌دانستم که او خاص است حتی قبل از اینکه بهتر شود.

همیشه کتی را به عنوان یک قهرمان به‌یاد داشتم. وقتی وارد اتاق کتی شدم، در تختش نبود. او روی یک صندلی کنار تامی، یک پسر کوچک بود.

باوجود این که حال کتی خوب نبود، با تامی و اسباب‌بازی‌هایش بازی می‌کرد. برای او حتی نشستن روی صندلی هم تلاش زیادی می‌طلبید. ولی او با تامی بازی می‌کرد چون این کار او را خوشحال می‌کرد. کتی همیشه لبخند میزد و هیچوقت به نظر نمی‌آمد که دردی دارد. او قبول نمی‌کرد که فقط روی تخت دراز بکشد. روزی (او را) دیدم که تصویری نقاشی می‌کند.

بعداً، آن را به یکی از بیماران سن‌بالا داد. روز دیگری بیرون رفت تا برای دختر کوچولوی بیماری گل بگیرد. کتی باعث می‌شد همه لبخند بزنند. دکترها سریعاً به دنبال حل مشکل مغز کتی بودند. عمل جراحی موفقیت‌آمیز بود. دکترها خبر خوب را به کارکنان بیمارستان اطلاع دادند.

کتی حالش خوب بود. او خیلی زود احساسی عالی پیدا کرد. بهتر شد و توانست یک ماه بعد از بیمارستان برود. من به عنوان یک پرستار سابقه‌ی زیادی دارم. بیماران بسیاری دیده‌ام. هرچند، هرگز دختری مثل کیتی ندیدم.

حتی بعد از اینکه خوب شد، هنوز به بیمارستان می‌آمد. بازیهایی متنوع با بیماران کم سن و سال انجام می‌داد. با بیماران مسن‌تر کتاب می‌خواند. قلب مهربان کتی باعث بهبودی سریع‌تر او شد.

برای من و همه‌ی کسانی که در بیمارستان هستند او یک قهرمان است.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A clerk with a brain problem
 - b. A little girl who is a hero
 - c. A little girl who wants a career as a nurse
 - d. Tommy and his various toys
2. Why does everyone like Katy?
 - a. She does good things, even though she is in pain.
 - b. She enters the hospital and saves a patient's life.
 - c. She has a problem at the base of her brain.
 - d. She hurries to help the clerk at his desk.
3. Which of the following is true at the end of the story?
 - a. Katy refuses to go back to the hospital.
 - b. Katy makes an effort to become a nurse.
 - c. Katy feels excellent but goes back to the hospital to see other patients.
 - d. Katy informs other patients of how to get better.
4. How did the nurse know Katy did not feel well?
 - a. Katy appeared to be sad.
 - b. Katy had to make an effort just to sit in a chair.
 - c. The nurse located a problem in Katy's brain.
 - d. The nurse asked Katy how she felt.
5. What does Katy do to help people?



adj.

actual

[ˈæktʃuəl]

واقعی، حقیقی

- ❖ actual means that something is real or true.
- This is the actual sword that the King owned, not a fake one.
- این، همان شمشیر واقعی است که متعلق به پادشاه است، نه جعلی آن.



v.

amaze

[əˈmeɪz]

متعجب کردن

- ❖ To amaze someone is to surprise them very much.
- The news in the paper amazed Jack.
- اخبار روزنامه‌ها جک را متعجب کرد.



n.

charge

[tʃɑːrdʒ]

هزینه

- ❖ A charge is the price to pay for something.
- The charge for the shirts was \$15.00.
- هزینه پیراهن‌ها 15.00 دلار بود.



v.

comfort

[ˈkʌm]

دلگرمی دادن، دلداری دادن، آسایش دادن، راحت کردن

- ❖ To comfort someone means to make them feel better.
- I wanted to comfort my friend after I heard the bad news.
- می‌خواستم بعد از شنیدن خبرهای بد، به دوستم دلگرمی بدهم.



v.

contact

[ˈkɑ:n]

تماس گرفتن

- ❖ To contact someone is to speak or write to them.
- I contacted Sue about my party.

➤ با سو در مورد مهمونی خودم تماس گرفتم.



n.

customer

[ˈkʌstəmə]

مشتری

- ❖ A customer is a person who buys something at a store.
- The customer put a few items in a bag.

➤ مشتری، تعدادی از اقلام را در کیسه‌ای جا داد.



v.

deliver

[dɪˈlɪvə]

تحويل دادن

- ❖ To deliver something is to take it from one place to another.
- The man delivered Chinese food to my house.

➤ آن مرد غذای چینی را به خانه من تحويل داد.



v.

earn

[ɜ:rn]

کسب کردن، بدست آوردن

- ❖ To earn means to get money for the work you do.
- He earns his living as a chef in a great restaurant.

➤ او به عنوان یک آشپز در یک رستوران بزرگ، کسب درآمد می کند.



n.

gate

[geɪt]

دروازه

- ❖ A gate is a type of door. gates are usually made of metal or wood.
- We want to put up a wooden gate around our house.
- ما می خواهیم یک دروازه چوبی در اطراف خانه خود قرار دهیم.



v.

include

[ɪn'kluːd]

شامل شدن، شامل بودن

- ❖ To include something means to have it as part of a group.
- Does this meal include a soft drink?
- آیا این غذا شامل یک نوشیدنی غیرالکلی می شود؟



v.

manage

['mænɪdʒ]

ترتیب دادن، مدیریت کردن، اداره کردن، کنترل کردن

- ❖ To manage something means to control or be in charge of it.
- I had to manage the meeting myself.
- مجبور شدم خودم ترتیب ملاقات رو بدهم.



n.

mystery

['mɪstəri]

رمز و راز، معما

- ❖ A mystery is something that is difficult to understand or explain.
- The path on the map was a complete mystery to me.
- مسیر روی نقشه، برای من یک معمای کامل بود.



v.

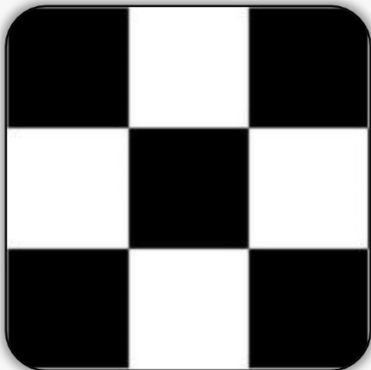
occur

[ə'kɜ:r]

رخ دادن، به وقوع پیوستن، اتفاق افتادن

- ❖ To occur means to happen.
- When did the thunderstorm occur?

➤ چه زمانی طوفان رخ داد؟



n.

opposite

['ɑ:pəzɪt]

خالف، متضاد

- ❖ If A is the opposite of B, A is completely different from B.
- The opposite of black is white.

➤ متضاد سیاه، سفید است.



n.

plate

[pleɪt]

بشقاب

- ❖ A plate is a flat round thing that you put food on.
- I put my plate down so I could put some food on it.
- بشقابم را پایین گذاشتم تا بتوانم مقداری غذا روی آن بریزم.



v.

receive

[rɪ'si:v]

دریافت کردن

- ❖ To receive something is to get it.
- I received a present on my birthday.

➤ من یک هدیه در روز تولدم دریافت کردم.



n.

reward

[ri'wɔ:rd]

پاداش

- ❖ A reward is something given in exchange for good behavior or work.
- He was given a reward for his excellent performance.
- او برای عملکرد عالی اش، یک پاداش گرفت.



v.

set

[set]

قرار دادن، گذاشتن

- ❖ To set something is to put it somewhere.
- Please set the dice down on the table.
- لطفا تاس را روی میز بگذارید.



v.

steal

[sti:l]

دزدیدن، سرقت کردن

- ❖ To steal is to take something that is not yours.
- The men tried to steal money from the bank.
- مردها سعی کردند که از بانک پول بدزدند.



n.

thief

[θi:f]

دزد، سارق

- ❖ A thief is someone who quietly takes things that do not belong to them.
- A thief broke into our home and took my mother's jewelry.
- دزد به خانه ما آمد و جواهرات مادرم را برد.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to take something that does not belong to you
a. steal b. include c. amaze d. plate
- to happen
a. manage b. set c. deliver d. occur
- to make someone feel better
a. reward b. earn c. comfort d. contact
- to get
a. receive b. gate c. charge d. actual
- a person who buys something
a. opposite b. mystery c. customer d. thief

Part B Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

- a. If I **receive** a present, I give someone something.
 b. If you **steal** money, you can get in trouble.
- a. A man who is alone can **contact** many people.
 b. If a woman is sad, someone should **comfort** her.
- a. He was given a **reward** for his poor work performance.
 b. You eat dinner off a **plate**.
- a. Everything that is for sale has a **charge**.
 b. A **customer** sells things to people.
- a. If you **earn** something, you give it to someone.
 b. Postmen **deliver** mail from one house to another.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the better response to each question.

1. Who should manage the classroom?
 a. The teacher should be in charge.
 b. The students should go to the classroom.
2. When did the theft occur?
 a. It happened this afternoon.
 b. It stopped early.
3. What is the actual number of people there?
 a. There are 31,872 people there.
 b. There are a lot of people there.
4. Did that movie amaze you?
 a. Yes, I had seen it many times before.
 b. Yes, the ending surprised me very much.
5. Where should I set this book?
 a. Put it on the bookshelf. b. It came from the library.
6. Does the wall have a gate?
 a. Yes, and it is often locked. b. Yes, the wall is very high.
7. Does the book include a CD?
 a. No, it is inside the book. b. No, we must buy the extra CD.
8. Has he received my present?
 a. He got it yesterday. b. He sent it to you yesterday.
9. What happened to the plate?
 a. It broke when I dropped it. b. It helped me with my homework.
10. Did you hear the news about the thief?
 a. He stole some expensive diamonds from the jewelry store.
 b. There was a person buying something.

A Better Reward

Jenny **delivered** food for a restaurant. She read the newspaper and said, “Uh oh.” There was a story about a **thief**. He **stole** food, and no one had seen him. Even the police couldn’t catch him. Jenny was a little scared. She worked close to that area.

The newspaper **included** a message from the police: “If anything strange **occurs**, call us. If you help us catch the thief, you’ll **earn a reward**.”

Jenny talked to Jim. He **managed** the restaurant. “Do you know about the thief?”

“Yes,” he said. “But he steals more than one person can eat. And why haven’t the police stopped him yet? It’s a **mystery**. If you see him, **contact** the police. Don’t run after him.”

Jenny drove to a **customer’s** house. She left her car and opened the **gate** to the house. But then she heard a noise by her car. She yelled, “Thief!” She wasn’t scared. She wanted the reward! She did the **opposite** of what Jim told her to do.

“Hey,” she yelled. “Get back here!” She **set** the food on the ground and ran to her car.

But the thief had already left with the food. Jenny followed a noise around the corner. She was **amazed**. She saw a dog and some puppies. They were eating her food! They looked thin and scared. “The **actual** thief is just a dog. She’s feeding her puppies,” she said. “That’s why she steals so much food.”

Jenny felt bad. She tried to **comfort** the dogs with another **plate** of food. Then she took them back to the store. Everyone there took a puppy home. Jenny called the police. She told them there was no real thief.

Jenny didn’t do it to **receive** the reward anymore. She said, “It was just a dog. But there’s no **charge** for catching this ‘thief,’” she said. “My new dog is a better reward.”





پاداشی بهتر

جنی برای رستورانی غذا تحویل می‌داد. روزنامه خواند و گفت: "اوه اوه". داستانی درباره‌ی یک دزد بود. غذا می‌دزدید و هیچ‌کس او را ندیده بود. حتی پلیس هم نمی‌توانست او را بگیرد. جنی قدری ترسیده بود. او نزدیک آن منطقه کار می‌کرد. روزنامه حاوی پیغامی از طرف پلیس بود: اگر اتفاقی عجیب افتاد، به ما زنگ بزنید.

"اگر به ما در دستگیری او کمک کنید، پاداش دریافت می‌کنید." جنی با جیم صحبت کرد. او (جیم) رستوران را مدیریت می‌کرد. در مورد سارق خبر داری؟ او گفت: "بله." اما او بیشتر از چیزی که یک نفر می‌تواند بخورد دزدی می‌کند. و چرا پلیس هنوز او را متوقف نکرده؟ این یک معما است. اگر او را دیدی، با پلیس تماس بگیر. تعقیبش نکن.

جنی به خانه‌ی یک مشتری رفت. از ماشین خود بیرون آمد و در حیاط خانه را باز کرد. اما از ماشین او صدایی آمد. داد زد "دزد!" نترسیده بود. پاداش را می‌خواست. بر عکس کاری که جیم گفته بود را انجام داد.

فریاد زد: "هی، برگرد اینجا!" غذا را روی زمین گذاشت و به طرف ماشینش دوید. اما دزد قبلاً با غذا فرار کرده بود. جنی صدایی که از سرخیابان می‌آمد را دنبال کرد. شگفت‌زده شد. سگ و چند توله سگ دید. داشتند غذای او را می‌خوردند! لاغر و ترسیده به نظر می‌آمدند. گفت "دزد درواقع یک سگه که به توله‌هاش غذا می‌ده." "به این دلیل که غذای زیادی می‌دزده." حس بدی به او دست داد.

سعی کرد سگ‌ها را با بشقاب دیگری از غذا آرام کند. سپس آنها را با خودش به مغازه برگرداند. هر کس در آنجا یک توله سگ را به خانه برد. جنی با پلیس تماس گرفت. به آنها گفت که دزد واقعی وجود ندارد.

جنی دیگر این کار را برای دریافت جایزه انجام نداد.

گفت: "اون فقط یک سگ بود." اما هزینه‌ای برای دستگیری این دزد وجود ندارد.

"سگ جدید من پاداشی بهتر است."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?

- a. A dog that steals a plate
- b. A man who tells a mystery
- c. A man who writes for a newspaper
- d. A girl who delivers food

2. Why did Jenny decide to run after the thief?

- a. She wanted to earn the reward.
- b. She knew that there was no actual thief.
- c. She always did the opposite of what Jim said.
- d. She wanted to charge a customer for that food.

3. What was true of Jim?

- a. He tried to comfort Jenny with food.
- b. He told Jenny that she should contact the police.
- c. He wrote a story that included a message from the police.
- d. He received a reward because he managed the store.

4. How did Jenny act when she heard the noise?

- a. She was amazed by the noise.
- b. She followed it around the corner.
- c. She ran through the gate to get away from it.
- d. She set the food on a table and ran to her car.

5. What did the police say to do if something strange occurred?



v.

advance

[əd]

پیشرفت کردن، جلو رفتن

- ❖ To advance is to go forward.
- He advanced up the ladder slowly.

➤ او آهسته از نردبان بالا رفت.



n.

athlete

['æθli:t]

ورزشکار

- ❖ An athlete is a person who plays sports.
- Some athletes can play many sports very well.

➤ برخی ورزشکاران می‌توانند ورزش‌های زیادی را به خوبی انجام دهند.



adj.

average

['ævərɪdʒ]

حد وسط، میانگین، وسط

- ❖ If something is average, it is at a normal level.
- I'm not rich or poor; I'm average.

➤ من نه ثروتمندم و نه فقیر، حد وسط هستم.



n.

behavior

[bɪ'heɪvjər]

رفتار، منش

- ❖ Your behavior is the way you act.
- Their behavior was good this semester. They didn't cause trouble.
- رفتار آنها در این ترم خوب بود. آنها مشکلی ایجاد نکردند.



prep.

behind

[bi'haind]

پشت، پشت سر

❖ behind means to be at the back of something.

➤ The little girl was hiding behind a tree.

➤ دخترک پشت یک درخت پنهان شده بود.



n.

course

[kɔ:rs]

دوره، کلاس

❖ A course is a class in school.

➤ I took a P.E. course in school this year.

➤ امسال یک دوره ورزش در مدرسه داشتم.



v.

lower

['ləʊər]

کاهش یافتن

❖ To lower something is to make it go down.

➤ The chart shows how his production has lowered over the year.

➤ این نمودار نشان می‌دهد که چگونه تولید او در طول یک سال کاهش یافته است.



v.

match

[mætʃ]

جور بودن، تطابق داشتن، همخوانی داشتن

❖ To match is to be the same or similar.

➤ The two shoes matched. They looked the same.

➤ هر دو کفش با هم جور بودند. آن‌ها مثل هم بودند.



n.

member

[ˈmembər]

عضو

- ❖ A member is a person who is part of a group.
- Julie is the newest member of our team.

➤ ژولی جدیدترین عضو تیم ما است.



adj.

mental

[ˈmentl]

ذهنی

- ❖ If something is mental, it has to do with your mind.
- I made a mental picture of the room.

➤ من یک تصویر ذهنی از اتاق درست کردم.



n.

passenger

[ˈpæsɪndʒər]

مسافر

- ❖ A passenger is a person who rides in a car, train, or airplane.
- One passenger was standing in the subway train.

➤ یک مسافر در قطار مترو ایستاده بود.



n.

personality

[ˌpɜːrs]

شخصیت

- ❖ Your personality is what you are like and how you behave.
- John has a bad personality.

➤ جان شخصیت بدی دارد.





n.

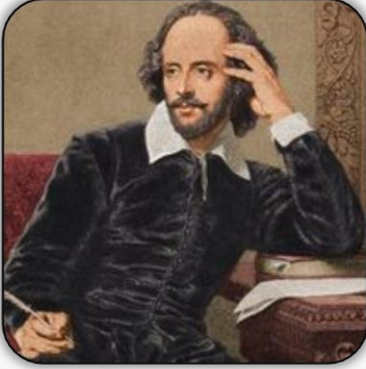
poem

[ˈpəʊəm]

شعر

- ❖ A poem is a short kind of writing.
- William Shakespeare wrote many poems.

➤ ویلیام شکسپیر اشعار بسیاری نوشت.



n.

pole

[pəʊl]

ستون، دیرک

- ❖ A pole is a long thin stick made of wood or metal that supports things.
- The flag was hanging from the flag pole.

➤ پرچم از میله ی پرچم آویزان بود.



v.

remove

[rɪˈmu:v]

برداشتن

- ❖ To remove something is to take it away.
- I removed the nail from the board.

➤ من میخ رو از روی تخته برداشتم.



n.

safety

[ˈseɪfti]

امنیت، ایمنی، سلامت

- ❖ safety means to be the condition of being safe and free from danger.
- For his own safety, he was placed in a car seat.

➤ او را به خاطر امنیتش در یک صندلی ماشین جا داده بودند.





v.

shoot

[ʃu:t]

شلیک کردن

❖ To shoot is to fire something like a bullet at someone or something.

➤ The hunter raised his gun to shoot at the target.

➤ شکارچی تفنگش را بالا برد تا به هدف شلیک کند.



v.

sound

[saʊnd]

به صدا در آمدن، صدا دادن

❖ To sound means to make a noise.

➤ The alarm clock sounded and woke us all up.

➤ ساعت زنگ دار به صدا در آمد و همه ما را بیدار کرد.



v.

swim

[swim]

شنا کردن

❖ To swim is to move through water.

➤ I love to swim in the ocean.

➤ من عاشق شنا کردن در اقیانوس هستم.



n.

web

[web]

تار

❖ A web is a home made by a spider.

➤ Mom cleaned the spider webs out of the garage.

➤ مامان تارهای عنکبوت را از گاراژ پاک کرد.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I need to find the other sock that is the same as this one.
ma _____
2. Please take away your feet from the table.
rem _____
3. This is a(an) very normal morning. Nothing bad has happened.
ave _____
4. The bell rattled, so we changed classes.
so _____
5. William wanted to go forward, but a wall stopped him.
adv _____
6. Clara is a person in a group of the running club.
me _____
7. Jesse is a very good sports player.
at _____
8. What is your favorite class?
c _____
9. He was a person taking a ride on the ship.
pa _____
10. What kind of character does Ted have?
p _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the **bolded** word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. I was **behind** the winner, so I won the race!
___ b. **Webs** are made by spiders.
2. ___ a. Reading increases your **mental** activity.
___ b. We **removed** the city last week.
3. ___ a. My shoes were **behind** the couch.
___ b. This **mental** exercise makes my arms tired.
4. ___ a. Have you ever found a bird's **web**?
___ b. I **lowered** the box onto the ground.
5. ___ a. Could you help me **lower** my seat please?
___ b. Be sure to **remove** the trash from the house.

Exercise 3

Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. to move through water
a. lower b. average c. advance d. swim
2. something nice to read
a. poem b. web c. member d. behind
3. the condition free from any danger
a. shoot b. safety c. athlete d. personality
4. a metal or wooden stick used to support things
a. pole b. remove c. passenger d. sound
5. the way you act
a. mental b. match c. course d. behavior

The Camp

Stacie wanted to stay at a nice hotel for vacation. But her parents sent her to a terrible camp instead. For breakfast, Stacie liked fresh juice and chocolate milk, but she got water at the camp. In the afternoon she wanted to write **poems**, but she had to **swim**. The camp was near an airport with loud planes. Spider **webs** hung over her bed. To her, the kids' **average behavior** was very bad. No girl **matched** her **personality**. She hated it.

One day, they had a class. **Mental** exercise **sounded** good to Stacie. But it was a **course** on water **safety**. They learned how to be safe **passengers** on a boat. Stacie didn't ever plan to go on a boat.

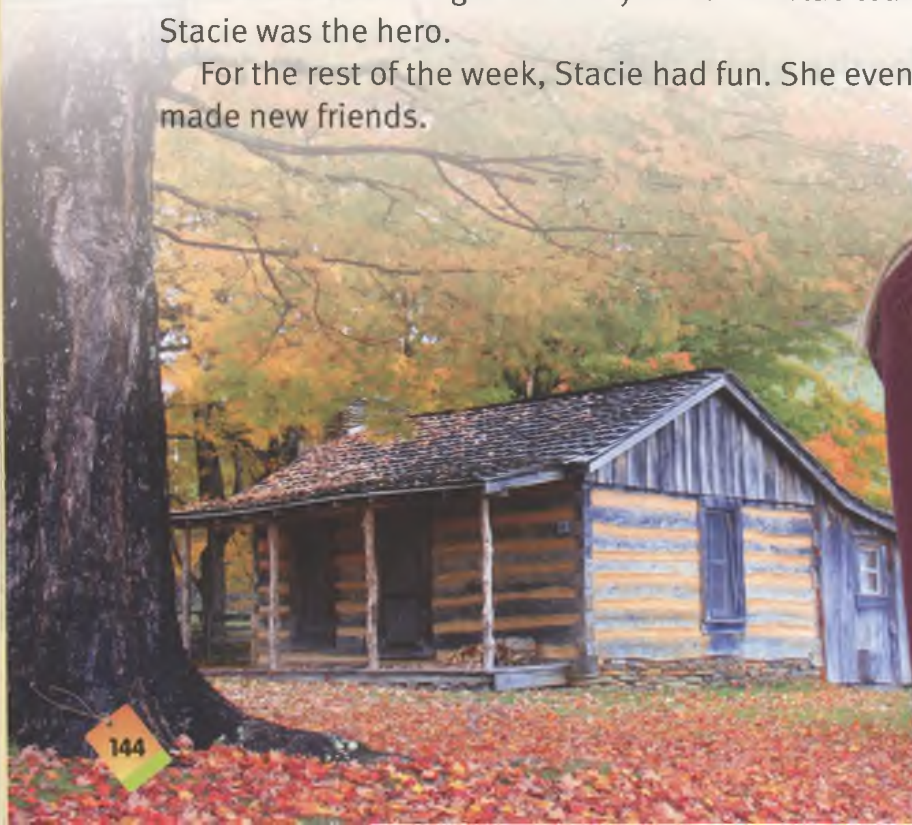
The next day, they played a game. There were a red team and a blue team. Stacie was on the blue team. Each team had to try to **remove** the other team's flag from a **pole**. They also had to use water guns. "I'm not much of an **athlete**," she said. But she still had to play.

Stacie took a water gun and looked for somewhere to hide. A boy said, "Stacie, you **advance** to the middle. I will go right. Those two will go left."

Stacie still didn't want to play. She walked into the forest and saw a red team player coming. Stacie hid **behind** a tree and then jumped out and **shot** the other player. "This is fun!" Stacie thought.

Several minutes after advancing further, Stacie saw the red flag. A red team **member** was watching over it. She shot him with her water gun. Then she **lowered** the flag and ran back to her team. "I got it!" she yelled. The blue team won! Stacie was the hero.

For the rest of the week, Stacie had fun. She even **made new friends**.





کمپ

استیسی می‌خواست که در یک هتل خوب برای تعطیلات اقامت کند. اما والدین او به جای آن او را به یک کمپ افتتاح فرستادند. برای صبحانه، استیسی شیر کاکائو و آبمیوه تازه دوست داشت، اما در کمپ فقط آب گیرش آمد. او می‌خواست بعدازظهر شعر بنویسد، اما مجبور بود شنا کند. کمپ نزدیک یک فرودگاه بود با هواپیماهایی که صدایی بلند داشتند.

تارهای عنکبوت بالای تختخواب او آویزان بودند. رفتار معمول بچه‌ها با او خیلی بد بود. هیچ دختری متناسب با شخصیت او نبود. از آنجا متنفر بود. یک روز یک کلاس داشتند. تمرین ذهنی به نظر استیسی خوب آمد. اما آن دوره‌ای در مورد امنیت دریایی بود. آنها یاد گرفتند که چطور مسافران ایمن و محتاطی در قایق باشند.

استیسی حتی برنامه‌ای برای رفتن به قایق نداشت. روز بعد، آنها یک بازی انجام دادند. یک تیم قرمز و یک تیم آبی بود. استیسی در تیم آبی بود. هر تیم باید پرچم تیم دیگر را از پایاهش درمی‌آورد. همینطور باید از تفنگ‌های آبی استفاده می‌کردند. گفت: من خیلی ورزشکار نیستم. اما هنوز مجبور بود بازی کند. استیسی یک تفنگ آبی برداشت و به دنبال جایی برای قایم شدن بود. پسری گفت "استیسی، از وسط پیشروی کن، من به راست می‌روم. آن دو نفر به سمت چپ خواهند رفت." استیسی بازهم نمی‌خواست بازی کند.

او وارد جنگل شد و دید یکی از بازیکنان تیم قرمز می‌آید. استیسی پشت درختی قایم شد و پرید بیرون و بازیکن دیگر را زد. استیسی با خود اندیشید "جالب است." چند دقیقه بعد از پیشروی، استیسی پرچم قرمز را دید. یک عضو تیم قرمز در حال نگهبانی از آن بود. او با تفنگ آب پاش به او شلیک کرد.

بعد پرچم را پایین کشید و به طرف تیم خودش دوید. فریاد زد: "گرفتمش." تیم آبی برنده شد! استیسی یک قهرمان بود. باقی روزهای هفته، برای استیسی خیلی خوش گذشت، حتی دوستان جدیدی هم پیدا کرد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

- How did Stacie win the game?
 - She advanced to the right.
 - She lowered the red team's flag.
 - She hit the red team with her water gun.
 - She swam all afternoon.
- Because of her personality, what would Stacie likely NOT want to do?
 - Read a poem
 - Play a mental game
 - Become an athlete
 - Stay at a nice hotel
- Instead of camp, where did Stacie want to be?
 - At a fancy hotel
 - At the airport
 - On a boat as a passenger
 - With an average student
- What did Stacie start to like about the camp?
 - The other kids' behavior
 - Having chocolate milk
 - Spider webs over her bed
 - Beating the red team
- What was Stacie's course about?



n.

block

[bla:k]

بلوک، توده



- ❖ A block is a solid piece of wood, stone or ice.
- I saw a block of ice on the floor.

➤ یک تکه یخ روی زمین دیدم.

v.

cheer

[tʃɪr]

هورا کشیدن، خوشحال شدن، تشویق کردن، شادی کردن



- ❖ To cheer is to give a loud shout of approval or encouragement.
- The crowd all cheered when the home team won.

➤ وقتی تیم میزبان برنده شد، همه هورا کشیدند.

adj.

complex

[kəm'pleks]

پیچیده



- ❖ If something is complex, it has many small parts. It is hard to understand.
- A jig-saw puzzle can be complex because it has so many pieces.

➤ یک پازل می‌تواند پیچیده باشد چون قطعات زیادی دارد.

n.

critic

['krɪtɪk]

منتقد



- ❖ A critic is someone who give their opinions about movies, books, plays...
- The wine critic tasted the wine so he could give his opinion.

➤ کارشناس شراب، مزه ی شراب را چشید تا بتواند درباره ی آن نظر بدهد.



n.

event

[i'vent]

اتفاق، واقعه، رویداد

❖ An event is something that happens, especially something important.

➤ Finishing high school was a major event in his life.

➤ پایان دوره دبیرستان، یک اتفاق مهم در زندگی او بود.



v.

exercise

['ek]

ورزش کردن

❖ To exercise is to run or play sports so that you can be healthy.

➤ You should exercise every day.

➤ شما باید هر روز ورزش کنید.



v.

fit

[fit]

جا گرفتن

❖ If something fits, it is small enough or the right size to go there.

➤ The colorful eggs fit into the box.

➤ تخم‌مرغ‌های رنگارنگ در جعبه جا می‌گیرند.



n.

friendship

['frendʃɪp]

دوستی

❖ friendship is the relationship between people who are friends.

➤ Michael and Lisa have a very strong friendship with each other.

➤ مایکل و لیزا، دوستی بسیار محکمی با یکدیگر دارند.



n.

guide

[gaid]

راهنما

- ❖ A guide is someone who shows you where to go.
- We followed a guide at the park.

➤ ما به دنبال یک راهنما در پارک رفتیم.



n.

lack

[læk]

فقدان

- ❖ If there is a lack of something, there is not enough of it.
- His only problem is a lack of money.

➤ تنها مشکل او فقدان پول است.



n.

passage

['pæsiɔʒ]

گذرگاه

- ❖ A passage is a long area with walls that goes from one place to another.
- The long passage led us to the other side of the field.

➤ گذرگاه طولانی، ما را به سوی دیگر میدان مزرعه کرد.



v.

perform

[pər'fɔ:rm]

اجرا کردن

- ❖ To perform is to do something in front of people who watch.
- He will perform a song for the class.

➤ او برای کلاس یک آهنگ اجرا خواهد کرد.





n.

pressure

['preʃər]

فشار

❖ pressure is what you apply to make someone do something.

➤ They put pressure on him to change his mind.

➤ آن‌ها به او فشار وارد کردند تا ذهنیتش را تغییر دهند.



adj.

probable

['pra:b]

احتمالا، محتمل

❖ If something is probable, it is likely to happen.

➤ It is probable that you will get a good grade if you study for the test.

➤ اگر برای آزمون درس بخوانی، احتمالا نمره خوبی به دست خواهی آورد.



adj.

public

['pʌblɪk]

عمومی

❖ If something is public, it is meant for everyone to use.

➤ I went to the public park to play with my friends.

➤ من به پارک عمومی رفتم تا با دوستانم بازی کنم.



v.

strike

[straɪk]

مشت زدن، ضربه زدن

❖ To strike someone or something is to hit them.

➤ She struck the other girl in the face.

➤ او به صورت دختر دیگر مشت زد.



v.

support

[sə'pɔ:rt]

حمایت کردن

- ❖ To support something is to like it and help it be successful.
- Everyone at work supports the new plan.

➤ همه در محل کار از طرح جدید حمایت می‌کنند.



n.

task

[tæsk]

وظیفه

- ❖ A task is work that someone has to do.
- Who has the task of building the brick wall?

➤ چه کسی وظیفه ساختن دیوار آجری را دارد؟



n.

term

[tɜ:rm]

عبارت، اصطلاح

- ❖ A term is a word for something.
- I often use the term "oops" when I make a mistake.

➤ من اغلب وقتی که اشتباه می‌کنم، از عبارت "ای وای" استفاده می‌کنم.



v.

unite

[ju'nait]

متحد شدن، متحد کردن، به هم پیوستن

- ❖ To unite is to get together to do something.
- If we unite, we can finish our project faster.

➤ اگر متحد شویم، می‌توانیم پروژه خود را سریع‌تر به پایان برسانیم.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right definition for the given word.

- probable
 - a word for something
 - to hit
 - a leader
 - likely
- lack
 - to not have enough
 - to try to make people act
 - to have many parts
 - to do activities to be healthy
- term
 - available for everyone
 - to help something work
 - a thing that happens
 - a word for something
- unite
 - a person who dislikes
 - relationship between people who are friends
 - to work together
 - to do something to entertain
- fit
 - a large piece
 - connection between places
 - to be the right size
 - a loud shout of encouragement

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The car will hit the wall if they don't slow down.
st _____
- The athletes run to stay healthy every morning.
ex _____
- I hope they will do in public a funny play.
pe _____
- Is there a way to get from one place to another in the city?
p _____
- Her effort to make someone do something made Brad change his mind.
p _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. They've known each other for years _____.
 ___ a. and have a good friendship ___ b. go to a passage
2. I don't know where we are. _____.
 ___ a. We need a guide ___ b. Let's perform right now
3. The concert tonight _____.
 ___ a. will strike the wall ___ b. will be a fun event
4. I gave him money because _____.
 ___ a. I support his company ___ b. He didn't do any work
5. At the end of her speech, _____.
 ___ a. don't forget to cheer loudly ___ b. fit into your clothes
6. You don't have to pay to get in when _____.
 ___ a. an accident is probable ___ b. you go to a public park
7. You must think hard because _____.
 ___ a. I am under pressure ___ b. the problem is complex
8. Glad is _____.
 ___ a. another term for happy ___ b. the way people unite
9. The artist made his art _____.
 ___ a. from a block of wood ___ b. the people cheered for victory
10. He thought the book was boring. _____.
 ___ a. He was a critic of it ___ b. He really enjoyed it

A Strong Friendship

Tim was the strongest man in the town. When he played sports, he always won. He **performed** and **exercised** in the **public** park. He did this to show everyone how strong he was. Most people liked him, but one man didn't. His name was Jack.

Jack hated Tim. Jack was a movie **critic** and the smartest man in town. He could solve **complex** math problems. But no one cared. Jack wanted to be famous like Tim.

One day, there was an unusual **event**. A big storm came suddenly. Snow covered the town. No one could get out. They needed food. The people said, "This is a **task** for a strong man." Tim was under **pressure** to save them. But Jack wanted to be the hero, so they both went. Tim said, "You can't help because of your **lack** of strength."

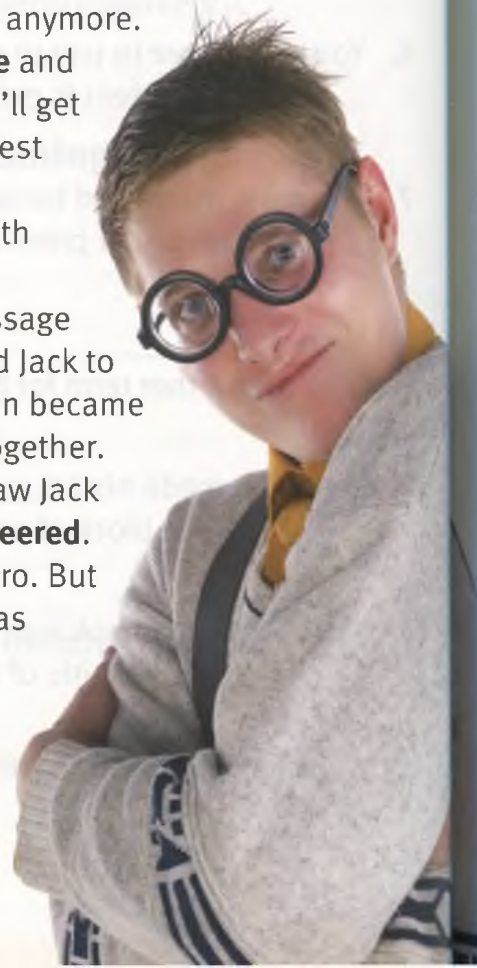
But Jack found some small **passages** under the snow. One of them led toward another town. That town had food. Because Tim was so big and strong, he almost couldn't **fit** inside. They walked until there was a **block** of ice in their way. Jack said, "We can't get past it. But if you **strike** it, it might break." Tim knew that was **probable**.

He broke it. When there were more ice blocks, Tim broke them. That made him tired. He couldn't walk anymore.

Jack said, "Let's **unite** and **support** each other. I'll get the food alone. You rest here."

Jack came back with food. Tim couldn't remember which passage led home. He needed Jack to be his **guide**. The men became friends by working together.

In town, people saw Jack with the food and **cheered**. They called Jack a hero. But Jack didn't care. He was thinking of something else. He said to Tim, "I thought I was smart, but I learned a new **term** today: **friendship**."





رفاقتی محکم

تیم قوی‌ترین مرد شهر بود. وقتی بازی می‌کرد، همیشه برنده می‌شد. او در پارک عمومی تمرین و اجرا می‌کرد. این کار را می‌کرد تا به همه نشان دهد که چقدر قوی است. اکثر مردم او را دوست داشتند، اما یک نفر نه. نام او جک بود. جک از تیم متنفر بود.

جک یک منتقد فیلم و باهوش‌ترین فرد شهر بود. می‌توانست مسئله‌های پیچیده‌ی ریاضی را حل کند. اما کسی اهمیتی نمی‌داد. جک می‌خواست مثل تیم معروف باشد. یک روز، رویدادی غیرعادی رخ داد. ناگهان طوفانی بزرگ از راه رسید. شهر را برف پوشاند. کسی نمی‌توانست بیرون بیاید. آنها به غذا احتیاج داشتند.

مردم گفتند این کار یک مرد قدرتمند است. تیم برای نجات آنها تحت فشار بود. اما جک می‌خواست قهرمان شود پس هر دو رفتند. تیم گفت: "به خاطر ضعف در قدرتت نمی‌توانی کمک کنی." اما جک مسیرهایی کوچک زیر برف پیدا کرد.

یکی از آنها به شهر دیگر راه داشت. آن شهر غذا داشت. چون تیم بزرگ و قوی بود به زور داخل جا میشد. پیاده راه رفتند تا جایی که به یک بلوک یخ رسیدند. جک گفت: "ما نمی‌توانیم از آن رد بشویم. اما اگر به آن ضربه بزنیم، ممکن است بشکند." تیم می‌دانست که احتمالش وجود دارد. آن را شکست.

وقتی بلوک‌های یخی سر راه بود تیم آنها را می‌شکست. این باعث خستگی او شد. دیگر نمی‌توانست راه برود. جک گفت: "بیا متحد شویم و از همدیگه محافظت کنیم." من غذا را می‌گیرم و تو اینجا استراحت کن. جک با غذا برگشت.

تیم به خاطر نمی‌آورد که کدام مسیر به خانه آنها را هدایت می‌کند. به جک نیاز داشت تا راهنمای او باشد. آنها (مردها) با کارکردن با هم، دوست شدند.

در شهر، مردم جک را با غذا دیدند و دست زدند. آنها جک را قهرمان خواندند. اما جک اهمیتی نداد. به چیز دیگری فکر می‌کرد. به تیم گفت: "فکر کردم من باهوشم ولی امروز یک عبارت جدید یاد گرفتم: دوستی"

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of this story?
 - a. The best way to strike blocks
 - b. How a strong man learned a new term
 - c. How two men unite and support each other
 - d. How to solve complex problems
2. How did Tim show people he was strong?
 - a. He struck the critic in front of them.
 - b. He performed and exercised in public places.
 - c. He found a passage in the snow.
 - d. He lifted a block of ice for them.
3. Why did Jack become a hero?
 - a. He fit inside the passage.
 - b. He brought food to the town.
 - c. He put pressure on Tim to save the town.
 - d. He won every sport he played.
4. What did Tim think while in the passage?
 - a. He thought breaking the ice was probable.
 - b. He thought the storm was an unusual event.
 - c. He thought he was a good guide for Jack.
 - d. He thought it was a very difficult task.
5. What happened when Jack was called a hero?



v.

associate

[ə'soʊ]

پیوست دادن، شریک شدن، مرتبط ساختن

- ❖ To associate means to connect something with a person or thing.
- Most people associate birthday parties with having fun.
- بیشتر مردم جشن تولد را به خوش گذراندن با هم، پیوست می دهند.



n.

environment

[in'vaɪrənmənt]

محیط زیست، محیط، پیرامون

- ❖ The environment is the place where people work or live.
- Keeping our environment clean is important to our health.
- تمیز نگه داشتن محیط زیست، برای سلامتی ما مهم است.



n.

factory

['fæktəri]

کارخانه

- ❖ A factory is a building where things are made or put together.
- We have only one factory in our town.
- ما فقط یک کارخانه در شهر خود داریم.



n.

feature

['fi:tʃər]

ویژگی

- ❖ A feature is an important part of something.
- The cell phone has many features.
- تلفن همراه ویژگی‌های بسیار زیادی دارد.



n.

instance

[ˈɪnstəns]

نمونه، مثال

- ❖ An instance is an example of something.
- I have never experienced an instance of hate. Have you?
- من هرگز نمونه ای از نفرت را تجربه نکرده ام. تو چطور؟



v.

involve

[ɪnˈvɔːlv]

درگیر بودن

- ❖ To involve means to be actively taking part in something.
- The whole family was involved in playing the game.
- تمام خانواده درگیر بازی بودند.



n.

medicine

[ˈme]

دارو

- ❖ medicine is something you take to feel better or treat an illness.
- The doctor gave me medicine for my cold.
- پزشک برای سرماخوردگی به من دارو داد.



n.

mix

[mɪks]

ترکیب، مخلوط

- ❖ A mix is different things put together.
- The green mix we made in science class spilled onto the table.
- ترکیب سبزرنگی که ما در کلاس علوم درست کردیم، روی میز ریخت.



v.

organize

[ˈɔ:rg]

سازماندهی کردن

- ❖ To organize is to plan or get ready for an event.
- Make a list to help you organize the things you need.
- لیستی تهیه کنید تا به شما در سازماندهی چیزهایی که نیاز دارید کمک کند.



n.

period

[ˈpɪr]

دوره ی زمانی، دوره، عصر

- ❖ A period is an amount of time when something happens.
- In one period in Europe, there were many knights.
- در یک دوره زمانی در اروپا، شوالیه های زیادی وجود داشتند.



v.

populate

[ˈpɑ:p]

سکونت داشتن، زندگی کردن

- ❖ If people populate an area, they live there.
- Billions of people populate the Earth.
- میلیاردها نفر جمعیت روی کره زمین زندگی می کنند.



v.

produce

[prə]

تولید کردن

- ❖ To produce something is to make or grow it.
- This tree produces apples every year.
- این درخت هر ساله سیب میدهد.



n.

range

[reɪndʒ]

طیف، محدوده

❖ A range is a number or a set of similar things.

➤ I saw a range of cars to choose from.

➤ من طیف وسیعی از اتومبیل ها را برای انتخاب کردن دیدم.



v.

recognize

['rekəɡnaɪz]

شناختن، تشخیص دادن

❖ To recognize something is to know it because you have seen it before.

➤ I recognized an old friend from many years ago.

➤ من دوستی قدیمی از سالهای خیلی دور را شناختم.



adj.

regular

['regjələɹ]

، منظم، مرتب، عادی

❖ If something is regular, it happens often and in equal amounts of time.

➤ Our regular lunch time is around noon.

➤ زمان معمول صرف ناهار برای ما، حدود ظهر است.



n.

sign

[saɪn]

نشانه

❖ A sign is a notice giving information, directions, a warning, etc.

➤ The sign indicated that today would be a bad day.

➤ این نشانه حاکی از آن بود که امروز روز بدی خواهد بود.



n.

tip

[tɪp]

نوک

- ❖ A tip is a pointed end of something.
- The tip of his pen was very sharp.

➤ نوک قلمش خیلی تیز بود.



n.

tradition

[trə'dɪʃn]

سنت، آداب و رسوم

- ❖ A tradition is something people have been doing for a long time.
- Marriage is a tradition all over the world.

➤ ازدواج در سراسر دنیا یک سنت است.



n.

trash

[træʃ]

آشغال، زباله

- ❖ trash is waste material or unwanted or worthless things.
- Please take out the trash; it smells bad

➤ لطفا آشغال ها رو بیرون بریزید؛ بوی بدی می دهد.



adj.

wide

[waɪd]

پهن، عریض

- ❖ If something is wide, it is large from side to side.
- The door was as wide as my arms.

➤ درب به اندازه دستانم من پهن بود.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to remember someone or something
a. mix b. range c. populate d. recognize
- the sharp end of a stick
a. instance b. regular c. tip d. environment
- large from side to side
a. wide b. period c. produce d. factory
- to be an important part of
a. sign b. medicine c. involve d. organize
- to make or create
a. feature b. produce c. associate d. tradition

Part B Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

produce sign populate period range

- Large companies can _____ many products.
- I offered her a _____ of choices from one to ten.
- How many people _____ this area?
- Give me a _____ if you need help.
- This _____ will last for one hour.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. When you **mix** things, you take them somewhere.
___ b. They make toys in a toy **factory**.
2. ___ a. A **feature** of this computer is its small size.
___ b. We **populate** over the ocean.
3. ___ a. We put the **trash** outside so it could be taken away.
___ b. We ate chicken once, so now it is a **tradition**.
4. ___ a. He went to the **tip** of the school.
___ b. Doing a book report **involves** reading.
5. ___ a. The garbage truck came and **produced** some sunshine.
___ b. I **associate** dogs with good pets.
6. ___ a. You **recognize** someone whom you have already met.
___ b. Blue is a **range** of color.
7. ___ a. The **sign** was open all evening.
___ b. I have a **regular** schedule. It doesn't change.
8. ___ a. The tree is very **wide** because it is small.
___ b. Don't forget to **organize** a meeting for next week.
9. ___ a. The clothing store had a sale on **medicine**.
___ b. Our **environment** has many plants and animals.
10. ___ a. An **instance** of kindness is sharing food.
___ b. He had no **period** to work.

Joe's Pond

Joe made the world a better place. He got the idea to do that at school. He watched a video there. It was about a **factory**. This factory **produced** a lot of **trash** and put it in a river. The trash and water were a bad **mix**. People **populated** the area by the river and drank its water. This made them sick. Many of them needed **medicine** and made **regular** visits to doctors.

But the video wasn't all bad news. It showed ways to pick up trash and why it's important to do this. It said people can make a difference to their **environment**. The video's important **features** made Joe **associate** trash with hurting people.

One day Joe walked through a park. He **recognized** some of the problems from the video. One **instance** of these problems was the trash in the pond. It was full of plastic cups. There was too much trash. Joe didn't want it to hurt anyone.

He told his grandfather about the park. His grandfather said, "You know, it's a **tradition** in our family to help people. That's why we give food to poor people. Maybe you can help people by cleaning the park."

Cleaning the park would **involve** hard work. Joe decided to **organize** a group to help him. He chose a **wide** area of the park. It had the most trash. He asked his family and friends to come. On Saturday, he gave everyone a sharp stick. They wondered why. He said, "You use the stick's **tip** to pick up trash. This makes it easier." They worked for six weeks. Different people helped each time, but Joe was always there.

In that **period** of time, Joe saw a **range** of results. There was no trash in the water. People could swim in it. Joe knew that was a good **sign**. He was happy because he helped his environment.





برکه‌ی جویی

جویی دنیا را به جایی بهتر تبدیل کرد. ایده‌ی آن در مدرسه به ذهنش رسید. او آنجا یک فیلم ویدئویی تماشا کرد. در مورد یک کارخانه بود. این کارخانه آشغال زیادی تولید می‌کرد و به رودخانه می‌ریخت. زباله و آب ترکیب بدی بودند. مردم در منطقه کنار رودخانه زندگی می‌کردند و آب آن را می‌نوشیدند.

این کار آنها را بیمار کرد. بسیاری از آن‌ها به دارو احتیاج داشتند و مدام به دکتر مراجعه می‌کردند. اما تمام این ویدئو خبر بد نبود. راه‌هایی برای جمع آوری زباله و علت مهم بودن انجام این کار را نشان می‌داد. نشان داد که مردم می‌توانند تغییری در محیط زیست خود به وجود بیاورند. ویژگی‌های مهم ویدیو باعث شد جویی آشغال را مرتبط با آسیب رساندن به مردم بداند.

یک روز جویی از داخل پارکی عبور می‌کرد. او بعضی از مشکلات را از آن فیلم به یاد آورد. یک نمونه از این مسائل زباله‌های برکه بود. آنجا پر از فنجان‌های پلاستیکی بود. آشغال زیادی جمع شده بود. جویی نمی‌خواست به کسی صدمه بزند. او به پدر بزرگش در مورد پارک گفت.

پدر بزرگش گفت: "میدانی، در خانواده ما کمک کردن به مردم یک سنت است." به همین علت به مردم فقیر غذا می‌دهیم. شاید بتوانی با تمیز کردن پارک به مردم کمک کنی" تمیز کردن پارک کار سختی بود.

جویی تصمیم گرفت گروهی را سازمان‌دهی کند تا به او کمک کنند. بخشی وسیع از پارک را انتخاب کرد. بیشترین زباله آنجا بود. از دوستان و خانواده‌ی خود درخواست کرد که بیایند. شنبه، به همه یک چوب تیز داد. آن‌ها تعجب کردند که چرا! گفت "از نوک این برای برداشتن آشغال استفاده کنید. راحت‌تره" آنها به مدت شش هفته کار کردند.

هر بار افراد مختلفی کمک کردند اما جویی همیشه آنجا بود. در این دوره‌ی زمانی، جویی متوجه یکسری از نتایج شد. آشغالی در آب نبود، مردم می‌توانستند شنا کنند. جویی می‌دانست که این نشانه‌ی خوبی است. او خوشحال بود چون به محیط زیستش کمک کرده بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of this story?
 - a. A grandfather teaching traditions
 - b. How to recognize signs of sickness
 - c. An instance of videos helping students study
 - d. A boy helping the environment
2. When did the boy decide to clean the park?
 - a. After he saw a video about a factory harming a river with its trash
 - b. After he went there on regular visits
 - c. After he saw a range of people cleaning it
 - d. After he associated trash with harming people
3. Why did the people in the video get sick?
 - a. A factory put trash in a river.
 - b. They produced too much trash.
 - c. They populated too many parks.
 - d. They had no medicine for a long period.
4. Why was it easy to pick up the trash?
 - a. It did not involve hard work.
 - b. Joe did not organize the group.
 - c. They used the tips of sharp sticks.
 - d. The people had a good mix of tools to use.
5. What did the features of the video make Joe do?



n.

advice

[əd'vaɪs]

نصیحت، مشورت، مشاوره، توصیه

- ❖ advice is an opinion about what to do.
- I don't know how to study for my exams. Can you give me some advice?
من نمی دانم چطور برای امتحان درس بخونم. ممکنه توصیه‌ای بهم بکنی؟



prep.

along

[ə'lɔ:ŋ]

در طول

- ❖ along means to move from one part of a road, river etc. to another.
- Walk along this tunnel for ten minutes, and you'll see a door on the left.
ده دقیقه در طول این تونل قدم بزنید و در سمت چپ، یک در را خواهید دید.



n.

attention

[ə'tenʃn]

توجه

- ❖ attention is the notice, thought, or consideration of someone.
- His work got the attention of two of his co-workers.
کار او توجه دو نفر از همکارانش را جلب کرد.



v.

attract

[ə'trækt]

جذب کردن

- ❖ To attract means to make a person or thing come closer or be interested.
- The magnet attracted the metal.
آهن ربا آهن را جذب کرد.



v.

climb

[klaɪm]

صعود کردن، بالا رفتن

- ❖ To climb means to use your hands and feet to go up on something.
- The girls climbed to the top of the mountain.

➤ دخترها تا بالای کوه صعود کردند.



v.

drop

[drɑ:p]

پایین ریختن، انداختن، رها کردن، افتادن

- ❖ To drop is to fall or allow something to fall.
- A small amount of water dropped from the bottle.

➤ مقدار کمی آب از بطری بیرون ریخت.



adj.

final

['faɪnəl]

، نهایی، پایانی

- ❖ If something is final, it is the last part.
- In the final part of the film, the man and the woman got married.

➤ در بخش پایانی فیلم، مرد و زن ازدواج کردند.



adj.

further

['fɜ:rð]

، دورتر، بیشتر

- ❖ further is used to say something is from a distance or time.
- The escalator is further along than I thought.

➤ پله برقی دورتر از آن چیزی است که فکر می‌کردم.



v.

imply

[im'plai]

اشاره کردن

- ❖ To imply something is to suggest it without saying it.
- The man implied that he wanted the job, but he didn't say so.
- مرد به این نکته اشاره کرد که این شغل را می‌خواهد، اما چیزی نگفت.



v.

maintain

[mein'tein]

حفظ کردن، نگه داشتن، ادامه دادن

- ❖ To maintain means to make something stay the same.
- The balls maintain constant movement.
- توپ‌ها حرکت ثابت خود را حفظ می‌کنند.



adv.

neither

['ni:ðər]

نه این و نه آن، هیچ یک، هیچ یک از این دو

- ❖ You use neither to connect two negative statements.
- neither the pass on the left nor the pass on the right will lead us home.
- نه گذر از سمت چپ و نه از سمت راست، ما را به خانه نمی‌برد.



adv.

otherwise

['ʌðərwaiz]

در غیر اینصورت، وگرنه

- ❖ otherwise means different or in another way.
- It's good to stay active; otherwise, you'll gain weight.
- خوب است که فعال بمانید؛ در غیر این صورت وزن شما بالا خواهد رفت.



adj.

physical

[ˈfɪzɪkl]

جسمانی، فیزیکی، جسمی

❖ If something is physical, it is related to your body and not your mind.

➤ Biking is good for your physical health.

➤ دوچرخه سواری، برای سلامت جسمانی شما خوب است.



v.

prove

[pru:v]

ثابت کردن، اثبات کردن

❖ To prove something is to show that it is true.

➤ My teacher proved the answer on the board.

➤ معلم من جواب را روی تخته ثابت کرد.



v.

react

[ri'ækt]

واکنش نشان دادن

❖ To react is to act in a certain way because of something that happened.

➤ James reacted badly to the news.

➤ جیمز نسبت به اخبار، واکنش بدی نشان داد.



v.

ride

[raɪd]

سوار شدن

❖ To ride something is to travel on it. You can ride an animal, a bike, etc.

➤ I will ride a roller-coaster for the first time today.

➤ امروز برای اولین بار سوار ترن هوایی خواهم شد.



adj.

situated

['sɪtʃuətɪd]

واقع شده



❖ If something is situated somewhere, it is in that place.

➤ The white board is situated between the two men.

➤ تخته سفید بین این دو مرد واقع شده است.

n.

society

[sə'saɪəti]

جامعه



❖ society is people and the way that they live.

➤ society expects people to be good and honest.

➤ جامعه انتظار دارد که مردم خوب و صادق باشند.

n.

standard

['stænd]

استاندارد



❖ A standard is what people consider normal or good.

➤ This older model TV is below our store's standards.

➤ این تلویزیون مدل قدیمی‌تر، پایین تر از استانداردهای فروشگاه ما است.

v.

suggest

[sə'dʒest]

پیشنهاد دادن



❖ To suggest something means to give an idea or plan about it.

➤ He suggested that we go to see his boss.

➤ او پیشنهاد کرد که ما برای دیدن رئیسش برویم.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to keep something going
a. maintain b. react c. standard d. prove
- not this one or that one
a. neither b. further c. along d. situated
- people and how they act
a. otherwise b. society c. advice d. climb
- describing the body
a. final b. drop c. physical d. attention
- to make someone interested
a. imply b. suggest c. attract d. ride

Part B Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- How did Clare act when you told her about the party?
re _____
- In this group of people, wearing hats is common.
soc _____
- I invited Jane and Lisa to my house, but not Jane or Lisa could come.
nei _____
- I've nearly finished the book. I'm on the last page.
f _____
- I can jump higher than you. Watch me, and I will show you that I can do it.
p _____

Exercise 2

Part A Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. suggest / advice

Can I give you some _____?

I _____ that you do your homework before you go out.

2. situated / attention

I got everyone's _____ with my new dress.

Where is your office _____ in the building?

3. dropped / standard

The _____ of his work is very high.

I accidentally _____ my phone in the snow.

4. attracted / reacted

He _____ my attention by waving to me.

She _____ badly to the news.

5. further / along

How much _____ is the beach? I'm tired!

We walked _____ the path for two hours.

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. She was angry when _____.

___ a. he implied that she was not smart

___ b. he proved that she was right

2. If you want to win the race, you need to _____.

___ a. be in good physical condition

___ b. drop off all of your extra work

3. He said that I should play sports, so I _____.

___ a. suggested playing football

___ b. gave him my advice

4. The sound of the car's horn _____.

___ a. got everyone's attention

___ b. is situated next to the bus stop

5. We are nearly at Jack's house. _____.

___ a. It's much further down the road

___ b. He lives along this road

Archie and His Donkey

Old Archie needed some money. He decided to sell his donkey. So he and his son Tom went to town. It was **situated** many miles away.

Soon, they met a woman. "Where are you going?" she asked.

"To town," said Archie.

"Any smart person would **ride** the donkey," she said.

"What are you **implying**?" Archie asked. "I'm very smart!" Archie wanted to look smart. So he **climbed** onto the donkey. Then they continued in the direction of the town.

Further along the road, they met a farmer.

"Hello," said Archie. "We want to sell this donkey. Do you want to buy it?"

"I don't need a donkey," said the farmer. "But if you want my **advice**, don't ride it. The donkey needs to be in good **physical** condition."

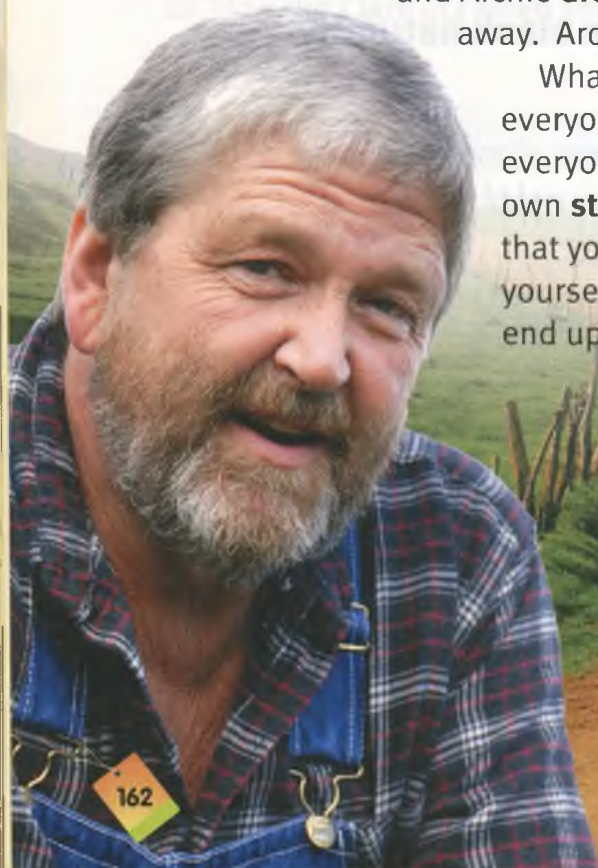
"Good idea," said Archie. "Tom, I want you to ride it. You're lighter."

"**Neither** you nor your son should ride it. It looks very tired. You should carry the donkey." **suggested** the farmer.

"You're right," said Archie. "Come on, Tom! We'll carry it for the **final** few miles!"

The donkey was very heavy, and they couldn't **maintain** a good speed. They didn't arrive until late in the evening. At last, they walked into the town. But there they **attracted** the **attention** of some teenage boys. They laughed at Tom and Archie. They started to throw stones at them. The donkey **reacted** by kicking. Tom and Archie **dropped** the donkey. It fell on the ground and then ran away. Archie lost his donkey. He went home with no money.

What does this story teach us? We cannot please everyone in our **society**. Don't take everyone's advice, but set your own **standards**. **Prove** to everyone that you can make decisions by yourself. **Otherwise**, you may end up with nothing at all.





آرچی و الاغش

آرچی پیر به مقداری پول نیاز داشت. تصمیم گرفت تا الاغ خود را بفروشد. بنابراین او به همراه پسرش تام به شهر رفتند. شهر چندین مایل دورتر بود.

مدتی بعد زنی را دیدند. او پرسید: "کجا می‌روید؟". آرچی گفت: "به شهر." آن خانم گفت: "هر آدم باهوشی سوار الاغ می‌شد." آرچی پرسید: "منظورت چیه؟" "من خیلی باهوشم!" آرچی می‌خواست که باهوش به نظر برسد. بنابراین سوار الاغ شد. سپس به راهشان به طرف شهر ادامه دادند.

در ادامه‌ی مسیر، کشاورزی را دیدند. آرچی گفت: "سلام. ما می‌خواهیم این الاغ رو بفروشیم. می‌خواهید بخرید؟" کشاورز گفت: "نیازی به الاغ ندارم، اما اگر توصیه من را بخواهید، سوارش نشین. الاغ باید در وضعیت فیزیکی خوبی باشه."

آرچی گفت: فکر خوبی است. تام می‌خواهم تو سوارش شوی. تو سبکتر هستی. کشاورز پیشنهاد کرد: نه تو و نه پسر تو نباید سوارش بشید. خیلی خسته به نظر می‌رسد. شما باید الاغ را حمل کنید.

آرچی گفت: "حق با توست، بیا تام! این چند مایل رو حملش می‌کنیم." الاغ خیلی سنگین بود و نمی‌توانستند سرعت خوبی داشته باشند. آنها تا اواخر عصر نرسیدند. در نهایت، وارد شهر شدند. اما آنجا توجه چند نوجوان را جلب کردند. آنها به تام و آرچی خندیدند. شروع به سنگ انداختن به طرف آنها کردند. الاغ با لگد زدن واکنش نشان داد.

تام و آرچی الاغ را انداختند. الاغ روی زمین افتاد و بعد فرار کرد. آرچی الاغش را از دست داد. او بدون هیچ پولی به خانه رفت. این داستان به ما چه درسی می‌دهد؟ ما نمی‌توانیم همه‌ی افراد در جامعه را راضی کنیم.

توصیه‌ی هرکسی را قبول نکنید ولی استانداردهای خود را داشته باشید. به همه ثابت کنید که به تنهایی می‌توانید تصمیم بگیرید.

در غیر این صورت، احتمالاً به هیچ چیز نخواهید رسید.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of this story?
 - a. You should always take the advice of older people.
 - b. Teenage boys are the nicest people in society.
 - c. You should set your own standards.
 - d. You should neither ride nor carry a donkey.
2. Why did Archie get on the donkey?
 - a. The woman implied that he wasn't smart.
 - b. The town was situated further away than he had thought.
 - c. He did not want to climb the final hill.
 - d. His walking speed was too slow.
3. Why did the farmer suggest carrying the donkey?
 - a. To attract people's attention
 - b. To keep the donkey in good physical condition
 - c. To maintain their speed
 - d. To prove that Archie was strong
4. Why did the donkey start kicking?
 - a. It didn't want to be carried along the road.
 - b. It didn't want to go in the direction of the river.
 - c. It reacted badly to a group of teenage boys' teasing.
 - d. It became very angry at Archie and Tom.
5. What did the teenage boys do when they saw Archie, Tom, and the donkey?



adv.

actually

[ˈæktʃuəli]

در واقع، در حقیقت

❖ actually means in fact or really.

- My dad looks a little mean, but actually he's very kind.
- پدرم کمی بدجنس به نظر می آید. ولی در واقع خیلی مهربان است.



n.

bite

[baɪt]

گاز (غذا)

❖ bite is the act of using your teeth to cut and tear into something.

➤ The boy took a big bite out of his hamburger.

➤ پسر یک گاز بزرگ از همبرگرش برداشت.



n.

coast

[kəʊst]

ساحل

❖ The coast is the land by an ocean.

➤ I stayed on the southern coast of Australia.

➤ من در ساحل جنوبی استرالیا ماندم.



n.

deal

[di:l]

معامله

❖ A deal is an agreement that you have with another person.

➤ I made a deal with the other company to give us some money.

➤ من با شرکت دیگر توافق کردم تا مقداری پول به ما بدهند.



n.

desert

['dezərt]

بیابان، صحرا

- ❖ The desert is an area of land without many plants or water.
- Not many plants grow in the desert.

➤ گیاهان زیادی در بیابان رشد نمی کنند.



n.

earthquake

['ɜ:rθ]

زلزله

- ❖ An earthquake is a shaking movement of the ground.
- The building shook during the earthquake.

➤ این ساختمان در هنگام زلزله لرزید.



adj.

effective

[i'fektiv]

مؤثر، اثربخش، تأثیر گذار

- ❖ If something is effective, it works well.
- Swimming is an effective way to stay healthy.

➤ شنا یک روش مؤثر برای سالم ماندن است.



v.

examine

[ig'zæmin]

معاینه کردن، امتحان کردن، بازرسی کردن

- ❖ To examine something is to look at it carefully.
- The doctor examined my eyes today.

➤ دکتر امروز چشم من را معاینه کرد.



adj.

FALSE

[fə:ls]

غلط، نادرست

- ❖ If something is false, it is not correct.
- If you think the answer is false, press the red button.
- اگر فکر می کنید جواب نادرست است، دکمه قرمز را فشار دهید.



n.

gift

[gɪft]

هدیه

- ❖ A gift is something you give someone.
- Dave received many gifts for Christmas.
- دیو برای کریسمس هدایای زیادی دریافت کرد.



n.

hunger

['hʌŋgər]

گرسنگی

- ❖ hunger is the feeling that you get when you need to eat.
- After playing all day long, he was filled with hunger.
- پس از آن که تمام روز را بازی کرد، گرسنگی بر او غالب شد.



v.

imagine

[i'mædʒɪn]

تصور کردن

- ❖ To imagine something is to think of it in your mind.
- Sally imagined herself winning lots of money.
- سالی خودش را در حال بردن مقدار زیادی پول تصور کرد.



n.

journey

['dʒɜːrni]

سفر



- ❖ A journey is a long trip.
- I went on a journey across the country with my parents.
- من به همراه پدر و مادرم به یک سفر در سراسر کشور رفتم.

n.

puzzle

['pʌzl]

معما



- ❖ A puzzle is something that is hard to understand.
- The question was a puzzle to him.
- سوال برای او یک معما بود.

adv.

quite

[kwaɪt]

کاملاً



- ❖ quite is used to say that something is complete or very much.
- I think typing on a keyboard is quite easy.
- من فکر می‌کنم تایپ کردن با صفحه‌کلید، کاملاً آسان است.

adv.

rather

['ræðər]

ترجیح دادن



- ❖ rather is used when you want to do one thing but not the other.
- I would rather have the red one than the blue one.
- ترجیح می‌دهم رنگ قرمز را داشته باشم تا رنگ آبی آن را.



adj.

specific

[spə'sɪfɪk]

خاص، مخصوص، مشخص

- ❖ If something is specific, it is precise or exact.
- Please choose a specific place on the map.

➤ لطفاً یک مکان مشخص روی نقشه انتخاب کنید.



n.

tour

[tʊr]

تور مسافرتی، تور گردشگری

- ❖ A tour is a short trip in which you see many sights.
- I took a tour of Asia and Europe.

➤ من به توری در آسیا و اروپا رفتم.



n.

trip

[trɪp]

سفر

- ❖ A trip is a journey to a certain place.
- Ken took a trip to the city yesterday.

➤ کن، دیروز به شهر سفر کرد.



n.

value

['vælju:]

ارزش

- ❖ If something has value, it is worth a lot of money.
- Matthew found a treasure of very high value.

➤ متیو یک گنج با ارزش بسیار بالا پیدا کرد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. gift
 - a. somewhere you go
 - b. something you give
 - c. someone at a doctor
 - d. something you think about
2. value
 - a. worth
 - b. the ocean
 - c. information
 - d. not true
3. earthquake
 - a. to see many things
 - b. movement of the ground
 - c. a need to eat
 - d. to work well
4. quite
 - a. to feel awake
 - b. instead
 - c. to look at
 - d. very much
5. puzzle
 - a. sand
 - b. to be gone a long time
 - c. in fact
 - d. a difficult question
6. deal
 - a. a lot of information
 - b. an agreement with another person
 - c. a game
 - d. to want to do one thing but not another
7. hunger
 - a. a strong need for food
 - b. a long trip to a place
 - c. when you feel awake
 - d. something worth a lot of money
8. desert
 - a. a place without water
 - b. something you give someone
 - c. in fact
 - d. something that is not correct
9. effective
 - a. to think in your head
 - b. to go somewhere
 - c. to choose something
 - d. working very well
10. coast
 - a. to look at something
 - b. to see many things
 - c. the ground moving
 - d. the edge of the ocean

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the better response to each question.

- Which would you have, juice or water?
 a. I would like water, please. b. Yes, thank you.
- Where did you go on your trip?
 a. We went to Rome. b. We like to stay home.
- Do you enjoy solving puzzles?
 a. They don't taste very good. b. Yes, I think they are fun.
- Try to imagine what your future husband or wife will look like.
 a. That's quite difficult. b. OK, I will go there tomorrow.
- Have you studied Spanish? I'm a little worried about taking the class.
 a. Actually it's not as hard as you think.
 b. Actually I would rather sleep now.

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. value / gift

I have a _____ for you. Do you think that my car has much _____?

2. coast / desert

I like to watch the ocean at the _____. It is hot in the _____.

3. bite / hunger

Having dinner will make my _____ go away.

Be careful around those dogs; they might _____ you.

4. tour / journey

I would like to take a _____ of the capital city sometime.

I went on a _____ around the world last year.

5. examine / quite

I think this dress is _____ pretty.

_____ your paper to check for mistakes.

The Spider and the Bird

There was once a very big spider. If a bug got into his web, he would **examine** it. However, he didn't eat the bug right away. He asked the bug a question first. It was always **quite** a difficult **puzzle**. If the bug's answer was correct, he let it go. If not, he ate it.

One day, a small bird on a **journey** flew into the spider's web. The spider couldn't **imagine** eating a bird. It was so big! But his **hunger** was too great. He said to the bird, "If you cannot give me a **specific** answer, I will eat you."

The bird laughed. "I could eat you!" But the bird was **actually** scared. She had used all her energy trying to get out of the web. And a spider's **bite** can be very **effective** in killing animals.

"Please don't eat me," the bird said. "I would **rather** make a **deal** with you."

"OK," the spider said. "If your answer is right, I will let you go. If not, you must give me a **gift**. It must be something of great **value**."

The bird said, "You can pick anything you want to eat. I will find it for you." The spider agreed.

"Where can you take a **trip** to the **coast**, the **desert**, and the mountains at the same time?" the spider asked.

The bird asked, "Does this place have **earthquakes**?" But the spider did not say anything. "I can see those places when I fly. Is the 'sky' the right answer?"

"**False!**" said the spider. "The answer is Hawaii! Now you must find some bugs for me."

The spider climbed on the bird's back.

They flew and ate bugs together. They

took a **tour**

of the

forest. Then

the bird took

the spider home.

From that day on,

they were friends.

And they never

tried to eat each other

again.





عنکبوت و پرنده

روزی عنکبوت بسیار بزرگی بود. اگر حشره‌ای در تار او گیر می‌افتاد، آن را بررسی می‌کرد. با این وجود، بلافاصله حشره را نمی‌خورد. اول از حشره سوالی می‌پرسید. همیشه یک معمای بسیار دشوار بود. اگر پاسخ حشره درست بود، او را رها می‌کرد. اگر نه، او را می‌خورد.

روزی، پرنده کوچکی که در سفر بود به داخل تار عنکبوت پرواز کرد (افتاد). عنکبوت نمی‌توانست تصور کند که یک پرنده را بخورد. خیلی بزرگ بود! اما خیلی گرسنه بود. او به پرنده گفت: "اگر نتوانی پاسخ دقیقی به من بدهی، تو را خواهم خورد." پرنده خندید "می‌تونم تو رو بخورم" اما درحقیقت پرنده ترسیده بود.

او تمام توانش را استفاده کرده بود تا سعی کند از تار عنکبوت بیرون بیاید. و نیش عنکبوت می‌تواند در کشتن حیوانات بسیار موثر باشد. پرنده گفت: "لطفا من را نخور." "ترجیح می‌دهم معامله‌ای با تو بکنم." عنکبوت گفت: "باشه" "اگه درست جواب بدی، اجازه می‌دم بری. اگه نه، باید یک هدیه بهم بدی. باید چیز با ارزشی باشه."

پرنده گفت: "هر چیزی که می‌خواهی رو میتونی انتخاب کنی تا بخوری. من برایت آن را پیدا می‌کنم." عنکبوت قبول کرد و پرسید: "اونجا کجاست که می‌شه: همزمان به ساحل، بیابان و کوه‌ها سفر کنی؟"

پرنده سوال کرد: "آیا این مکان زلزله دارد؟" اما عنکبوت چیزی نگفت. "آن جاها رو وقتی پرواز می‌کنم می‌بینم. آیا پاسخ درست "آسمان" است؟"

عنکبوت گفت: "غلطه! پاسخ درست هاوایی است. حالا باید مقداری حشره برام پیدا کنی." عنکبوت پشت پرنده سوار شد. با هم پرواز کردند و حشره خوردند. آنها به جنگل سفر کردند. بعد پرنده عنکبوت را به خانه برد.

از آن روز به بعد، آن‌ها دوست شدند و هرگز سعی نکردند تا دوباره همدیگر را بخورند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. Which is NOT part of the spider's puzzle?
 - a. The coast
 - b. An earthquake
 - c. A mountain
 - d. The desert

2. Why does the bird make a deal instead of flying away?
 - a. Her wings are quite effective in the web.
 - b. She is too tired from trying to get out of the web.
 - c. She cannot fly because of her hunger.
 - d. She would rather take the spider on a trip.

3. What will be the bird's gift to the spider?
 - a. A tour of the coast
 - b. A specific kind of web
 - c. Anything the spider wants to eat
 - d. A trip to anywhere

4. What is the spider's response to the bird's answer?
 - a. Your answer is false!
 - b. Can you imagine!
 - c. No deal!
 - d. That has no value!

5. What is the first thing the spider does when a bug gets into his web?



n.

band

[bænd]

گروه (موسیقی)



- ❖ A band is a group of people who play music.
- My brother is in a rock band.

➤ برادرم در یک گروه راک است.

adv.

barely

['berli]

به ندرت، به سختی



- ❖ barely means by the smallest amount, almost not.
- I barely had enough money to pay for my bus ticket.
- من به زحمت پول کافی برای پرداخت بلیط اتوبوسم را داشتم.

adj.

boring

['bɔ:riŋ]

خسته کننده، کسل کننده



- ❖ If something is boring, it is not fun.
- I think the Internet is boring.

➤ فکر می کنم اینترنت خسته کننده است.

v.

cancel

['kænsəl]

لغو کردن



- ❖ To cancel means to decide that an event or a request will not happen.
- She canceled the rest of her plans because of the rain.

➤ او بقیه برنامه های خود را به دلیل باران لغو کرد.



n. **driveway** ['draivwei]

راه اختصاصی، راه ورودی، راهرو، راه عبور

- ❖ A driveway is a short private road that leads to a person's home.
- The long driveway led us to their new house.

➤ راه ورودی طولانی، ما را به سمت خانه جدیدشان راهنمایی کرد.



n. **garbage** ['gɑ:rb]

زباله

- ❖ garbage is waste material like unwanted or spoiled food, bottles, paper, etc.
- The boy cleaned up the garbage around his house.

➤ پسر، زباله اطراف خانه‌اش را تمیز کرد.



n. **instrument** ['instrəmənt]

ساز، ابزار، وسیله

- ❖ An instrument is something designed to do a certain task like music.
- My favorite musical instrument is the piano.

➤ ساز موسیقی مورد علاقه من، پیانو است.



n. **list** [list]

لیست، فهرست

- ❖ A list is a record of information printed with an item on each line.
- My mom makes a list of groceries to buy.

➤ مادرم، یک لیست خواربار برای خرید تهیه می‌کند.



n.

magic

['mædʒɪk]

جادو، شعبده

- ❖ magic is the power to do impossible things.
- The magician used magic to pull a rabbit out of his hat.
- شعبده باز، از جادو استفاده کرد تا یک خرگوش را از کلاه بیرون بکشد.



n.

message

['mesɪdʒ]

پیام

- ❖ A message is a set of words that you send to someone.
- I left a message for you in the envelope.
- پیامی را برای شما در پاکت گذاشتم.



v.

notice

['noʊ]

توجه کردن، متوجه شدن، دیدن

- ❖ To notice something is to see it for the first time.
- Did you notice the view?
- به منظره توجه کردی؟



v.

own

[oʊn]

صاحب بودن، مالک بودن

- ❖ To own something means to have it. That thing belongs to you.
- My grandfather owns that house.
- پدربزرگم صاحب اون خانه است.



v.

predict

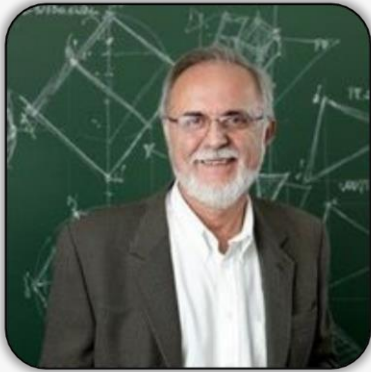
[pri'dikt]

پیش بینی کردن

❖ To predict something is to say that it will happen.

➤ She predicted that I would get married next year.

➤ او پیش‌بینی کرد که سال آینده ازدواج خواهیم کرد.



n.

professor

[prə'fesər]

استاد، پروفیسور، استاد دانشگاه

❖ A professor is a person who teaches in college.

➤ Mike's science professor knows a lot about physics.

➤ استاد علوم مایک، چیزهای زیادی درباره فیزیک می‌داند.



v.

rush

[rʌʃ]

عجله داشتن

❖ To rush is to go somewhere or do something very quickly.

➤ Nancy rushed to finish her homework.

➤ نانسی با عجله رفت تا تکالیفش را تمام کند.

Monday-Thursday	Friday
7:00 - 9:05 First Class	7:00 - 9:05 First Class
9:40 - 9:55 Enrichment	9:05 - 9:25 Break
9:55 - 11:50 Second Class	9:25 - 10:40 Second Class
11:10 - 12:10 Lunch Recess Homework Help	10:40 - 10:55 Break
12:10 - 1:25 Third Class	10:55 - 12:50 Third Class
1:25 - 1:45 Recess	12:50 - 12:50 Lunch Recess
1:45 - 3:00 Fourth Class	12:50 - 2:00 Fourth Class
	2:00 Dismissal

n.

schedule

['skedʒu:l]

برنامه، برنامه زمانی

❖ A schedule is a plan that tells you when to do things.

➤ What is your class schedule for today?

➤ برنامه کلاس شما برای امروز چیست؟



v.

share

[ʃer]

به اشتراک گذاشتن، اشتراک گذاشتن

- ❖ To share something is to give some of it to another person.
- Jimmy shared his apple with me.

➤ جیمی سیب خود را با من به اشتراک گذاشت.



n.

stage

[steɪdʒ]

صحنه، مرحله

- ❖ A stage is a place where actors or musicians act or sing.
- A large screen was on the stage.

➤ یک صفحه نمایش بزرگ روی صحنه بود.



n.

storm

[stɔ:rm]

طوفان، طوفان

- ❖ A storm is very bad weather. There is a lot of rain or snow.
- Did that storm wake you up last night?

➤ آیا آن طوفان شب گذشته شما را از خواب بیدار کرد؟



prep.

within

[wɪ'ðɪn]

درون، در داخل، در توی

- ❖ You use within to say that something is inside another thing.
- within the box, there was a pizza.

➤ درون جعبه ، یک پیتزا وجود داشت.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

list	professor	band	barely
schedule	predict	message	boring
rush	garbage		

1. If you don't understand the class, you should ask your _____ for help.
2. I could _____ hear his speech because of all the noise.
3. I _____ that tomorrow will be a good day.
4. There was a lot of _____ in his closet.
5. I made a _____ of things I want for my birthday.
6. I think that this TV show is _____. Let's watch something else.
7. Have you ever heard this _____? I really like its music.
8. Do you have time in your _____ to come over this week?
9. If I am not home when you call, just leave a _____.
10. If you wake up early, you don't need to _____ to get to school.

Exercise 2

Circle two words that are related in each group.

- a. cancel b. see c. notice d. own
- a. band b. boring c. instrument d. predict
- a. magic b. rush c. tour d. trip
- a. bite b. within c. hunger d. share
- a. schedule b. message c. stage d. list

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- I don't like this show. _____.

a. It is very boring

b. It is a long list
- A treasure appeared in the middle of the room. _____.

a. It owned us

b. It was magic
- The man read the weather report. _____.

a. He rushed through the building

b. He predicted rain
- I have many things to do today. _____.

a. My schedule is full

b. I can share with you
- When the play started, _____.

a. the actors walked onto the stage

b. there were no people within the room

The Party

Cody's family moved to a new house. His dad got a new job as a **professor**. Cody liked his new town, but he missed his grandparents. For his birthday, Cody wanted to have a party. His dad said, "Yes, we could even have a band play!"

On the day of the party, Cody woke up and **rushed** to get ready. He started to check his **list** of things to do. He was so excited! But then he **noticed** something terrible. There was snow on the ground and lots of it! "Dad!" he yelled. "How can the **band** play their **instruments** outside?"

Dad said, "We'll move the **stage** inside." It **barely** fit **within** the garage because there were some boxes and **garbage** there. But when they finished, they got a call from the band. They did not want to come in the snow **storm**.

Dad said, "Let's get someone to perform **magic**." But no one would come because of the snow.

Finally, Dad said, "Cody, there's too much snow. We need to **cancel** the party."

"Yes, sir," Cody said sadly. "It's going to be a **boring** birthday," he **predicted**. Cody wanted to **share** his birthday with someone. He wanted to be at his old home. He wanted to see his grandparents.

But then something got his attention. He noticed a car in the **driveway**. His grandparents **owned** a car like that!

Cody was right. His grandparents came for his birthday! "Happy birthday, Cody! We're sorry we are late. But there was so much snow. It made us go off **schedule**. We tried to leave a **message** to tell you."

Cody told them what happened. "I'm sorry," said Grandpa.

"I was sad," Cody said. "But I'm not anymore. I'm so happy to see you." Dad brought out Cody's birthday treat. It was his favorite type, a sundae with whipped cream on top. Then Cody told his grandparents about the new town. It was his best birthday ever.





مهمانی

خانواده‌ی کدی خانه‌ای جدید نقل مکان کردند. پدرش یک شغل جدید به عنوان استاد پیدا کرده بود. کدی شهر جدیدش را دوست داشت، اما دلش برای پدر بزرگ و مادر بزرگش تنگ شد. کدی می‌خواست که یک مهمانی برای تولدش داشته باشد. پدرش گفت: "بله، ما حتی می‌توانیم یک گروه موسیقی داشته باشیم."

در روز مهمانی، کدی بیدار شد و با عجله رفت تا حاضر شود. او شروع کرد به بررسی کردن لیست کارهایی که باید انجام بدهد. خیلی هیجان زده بود! اما بعدش متوجه یک چیز خیلی بد شد. روی زمین مقدار زیادی برف جمع شده بود! فریاد زد: "پدر، چطور گروه موسیقی می‌توانند سازهایشان را بیرون بنوازند؟" پدر گفت: "ما صحنه‌ی اجرا را به داخل خواهیم آورد." صحنه به سختی در گاراژ جا می‌شد زیرا تعدادی جعبه و آشغال آنجا وجود داشت.

اما وقتی کار آنها تمام شد، آنها تماسی از گروه موسیقی دریافت کردند. آنها نمی‌خواستند در برف و طوفان بیایند. پدر گفت: "اجازه بده شخصی را برای اجرای شعبده بازی بیاوریم. اما هیچ کدام به خاطر برف نمی‌آمدند."

آخر سر، پدر گفت: "کدی، برف زیادی وجود دارد، ما باید مهمونی رو لغو کنیم." کدی با ناراحتی گفت: "بله آقا." او حدس زد: "قراره که یک تولد کسل کننده باشه." کدی می‌خواست که تولد خود را با کسی به اشتراک بگذارد.

او می‌خواست که در خانه قدیمی او باشد. او می‌خواست که پدر و مادر بزرگش را ببیند. اما بعد چیزی توجه او را جلب کرد. متوجه ماشینی در راه عبور خانه شد. پدر بزرگ و مادر بزرگش ماشینی مثل آن داشتند. کدی درست می‌گفت. پدر و مادر بزرگ او برای تولدش آمده بودند!

"تولدت مبارک، کدی!" متأسفیم که دیر رسیدیم. اما مقدار زیادی برف وجود داشت باعث شد تا از برنامه عقب بیفتیم.. ما سعی کردیم که پیامی برای تو بفرستیم." کدی به آنها گفت که چه اتفاقی افتاده است. پدر بزرگ گفت: "من متأسفم." کدی گفت: "من ناراحت بودم. اما دیگر نیستم، خیلی خوشحالم که شما رو می‌بینم." پدر کدی را بیرون آورد. اون از نوع مورد علاقه‌ی او بود، یک بستنی با خامه زده شده بالای آن. بعد کدی برای پدر بزرگ و مادر بزرگش در مورد شهر جدید تعریف کرد. این بهترین تولدش تا به آن زمان بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What does Cody's dad do as a job?
 - a. His dad is a professor.
 - b. His dad is in a band.
 - c. His dad owns a restaurant.
 - d. His dad does magic shows.
2. What does Cody want for his birthday?
 - a. A musical instrument
 - b. A stage to play music on
 - c. Someone to share it with
 - d. Everything on his list
3. What does Cody predict will happen?
 - a. He will have a boring birthday.
 - b. He will eat ice cream.
 - c. No one will notice the snow storm.
 - d. He will have to rush to get ready for the party.
4. What gets Cody's attention?
 - a. His dad calling him "sir"
 - b. The car his grandparents own
 - c. The stage within the garage
 - d. That nothing is happening on schedule
5. Why did his grandparents try to leave a message?



v.

advertise

['æd]

تبلیغ کردن

- ❖ To advertise is to tell people about something on TV, radio, etc.
- They used a rabbit to help them advertise their product.
- آنها از خرگوش استفاده کردند تا به آنها در تبلیغ کردن محصولشان کمک کند.



v.

assign

[ə'sain]

واگذار کردن

- ❖ To assign something to someone is to tell them to do it.
- I assigned the worker an important task.
- من یک وظیفه مهم را به کارگران واگذار کردم.



n.

audience

['ɔ:diəns]

تماشاگران، حضار

- ❖ An audience is a group of people who watch something together.
- There was a large audience at the game.
- تماشاگران زیادی در این بازی حضور داشتند.



n.

breakfast

['brekfəst]

صبحانه

- ❖ breakfast is the first meal of the day.
- I eat breakfast at 8:00 every morning.
- من هر روز صبح ساعت ۸ صبحانه می‌خورم.



n.

competition

[,ka:m]

مسابقه



- ❖ A competition is a contest to see who is the best at something.
- He won the running competition over the weekend.
- او در تعطیلات آخر هفته در مسابقه دو برنده شد.

adj.

cool

[ku:l]

خنک



- ❖ If the weather is cool, it is a little bit cold.
- The weather is cool in the fall.
- هوا در پاییز خنک است.

v.

gain

[geɪn]

به دست آوردن، اضافه کردن



- ❖ If you gain something, you get more of it.
- I gained some weight over the summer.
- در تابستان به کم وزن اضافه کردم.

n.

importance

[ɪm]

اهمیت



- ❖ importance means the quality or condition of being needed or valued.
- VIPs are people of great importance.

➤ اشخاص مهم (VIP)، افرادی هستند که از اهمیت بالایی برخوردارند.



n.

knowledge

['nɑ:l]

دانش، آگاهی

- ❖ knowledge is information that you have about something.
- A music teacher should have good knowledge of music.
- یک معلم موسیقی، باید دانش خوبی از موسیقی داشته باشد.



adj.

major

['meɪdʒər]

عمده، بزرگ

- ❖ If something is major, it is big or important.
- I have a major problem. My boss wants me to redo my project!
- من یک مشکل بزرگ دارم. رئیس من می‌خواهد که من پروژه‌هایم رو دوباره انجام دهم.



adj.

mean

[mi:n]

بدجنس، آدم پست، بد

- ❖ mean describes someone who is unkind or cruel.
- My co-worker is a very mean person. He gets angry very quickly.
- همکار من یک فرد بسیار بدجنس است. او خیلی سریع عصبانی می‌شود.



v.

prefer

[pri'fɜ:r]

ترجیح دادن

- ❖ If you prefer something, you want it more than something else.
- I prefer to take the path that will lead me to a bright future.
- من ترجیح می‌دهم مسیری را طی کنم که مرا به سمت آینده‌ای روشن سوق دهد.



n.

president

['prezɪdənt]

رئیس جمهور



- ❖ A president is the leader of a country.
- The president of our country made an important announcement.
- رئیس جمهور کشورمان، اطلاعیه مهمی داد.

n.

progress

['prɑ:g]

پیشرفت



- ❖ progress is the act of getting closer to doing or finishing something.
- Our company made financial progress this year.
- شرکت ما در سال جاری پیشرفت مالی داشته است.

n.

respect

[rɪ'spekt]

احترام



- ❖ respect is a good opinion of someone because they are good.
- I have great respect for firemen.
- من برای آتش نشانان احترام زیادی قائل هستم.

adj.

rich

[rɪtʃ]

پولدار، ثروتمند



- ❖ If you are rich, you have a lot of money.
- He's rich. He can buy anything he wants.
- او ثروتمند است. می تواند هر چیزی را که می خواهد بخرد.



n.

skill

[skɪl]

مهارت

- ❖ A skill is the knowledge and ability that allows you to do something well.
- A snowboarder must have the right skills to do well.

➤ یک ورزشکار اسنوبرد، باید مهارت های مناسبی برای انجام کار خود داشته باشد.



adv.

somehow

['sʌmhaʊ]

یه جورایی، به نحوی، به طریقی

- ❖ somehow means in a way or by some means which is not known.
- He somehow had to find a way to reach the life preserver.

➤ او یه جورایی باید یه راهی پیدا می کرد تا به وسیله نجات برسه.



n.

strength

[streŋθ]

قدرت

- ❖ strength is the physical power that you have.
- Exercising will increase your strength and give you more power.

➤ ورزش کردن باعث افزایش قدرت شما می شود و به شما نیروی بیشتری می دهد.



v.

vote

[voʊt]

رای دادن

- ❖ To vote is to officially choose between two or more things.
- I voted for Billy to be our class president.

➤ من به بیلی رای دادم تا نماینده کلاس ما شود.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. breakfast
 - a. power
 - b. the first meal of the day
 - c. having a lot of money
 - d. the reason for something
2. knowledge
 - a. something that you can do
 - b. a good feeling about someone
 - c. to become better
 - d. what a person knows
3. president
 - a. the leader of a country
 - b. a little bit cold
 - c. to change other things
 - d. to tell people what to do
4. gain
 - a. to get more
 - b. to tell about
 - c. important
 - d. to want more than something else
5. audience
 - a. not hard
 - b. the first meal of the day
 - c. having a lot of money
 - d. a group of people watching something
6. somehow
 - a. unkind or unpleasant
 - b. slightly cold
 - c. in a way not known
 - d. to change something
7. competition
 - a. a leader
 - b. a game to find the best
 - c. a reason for something
 - d. something you can do
8. skill
 - a. what you know
 - b. power
 - c. the ability to do something well
 - d. to think someone is good
9. mean
 - a. not short
 - b. to get more
 - c. big or important
 - d. not kind
10. assign
 - a. to want more
 - b. give
 - c. to tell someone to do something
 - d. having a lot of money

Exercise 2

Part A Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

major advertise vote competition skills

- If you _____ something widely, everyone will know about it.
- If you have a _____ problem, you might need more help.
- I want to be in the _____ to show that I am the best.
- His skiing _____ are great! He can be a professional.
- Next month, our country will _____ for a new president.

Part B Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- I'm hungry because _____.
 a. I didn't eat breakfast b. I don't have much knowledge
- I'm reading a science book. _____.
 a. I want to be in the audience
 b. I want to gain some new information
- She always does the right thing. _____.
 a. This makes her rich b. I have a lot of respect for her
- I have milk and water. _____?
 a. Which one do you prefer b. Do you want a president
- He works on his project every day. _____.
 a. He assigned it to me b. He's making a lot of progress

How the World Got Light

The **president** of Darkland was a pig—a very bad pig. He was a pig of **major importance**. He was **rich**, and he had a lot of **strength**. But he was **mean** to all the animals in Darkland. He kept all of the world’s light in a bag. He **preferred** to keep the world **cool** and dark. He wanted to stop the **progress** of the city. The animals couldn’t work in the dark. He didn’t have any **respect** for them. “Light is too good for them,” he said. “Only I should have light.”

But the animals needed light. So they decided to hold a **competition**. They wanted to find the smartest animal in Darkland. That animal had to steal light from the president. They **advertised** the competition everywhere. All the animals came.

The animals all showed off their **skills**. The **audience** watched and then **voted** for the animal with the most **knowledge**. The winner was a tall bird named Raven. They **assigned** him the job of getting light.

The next morning, Raven ate **breakfast** and then left his home. “How will I **gain** light from the president?” thought Raven. He needed to trick the president **somehow**. Then, Raven had an idea. Raven could make his voice sound like anything!

Raven walked up to the president’s door. He made the sound of a crying baby. He cried very loudly. Soon, the president opened the door.

“Be quiet!” the president yelled. Right then, Raven quickly made his move. He flew by the pig and found the soft bag. He took it outside. The sun was inside the bag!

Raven flew high and put the sun in the sky. The president was very mad. Raven tricked him! But the other animals were very happy. At last, they had light—all because of Raven’s smart thinking.





جهان چگونه روشن شد

رئیس سرزمین سرزمین تاریکی (دارک لند) یک خوک بود - خوکِ خیلی بد. خوک با اهمیتی بود. ثروتمند بود و قدرت زیادی داشت. اما برخورد بدی با حیوانات دارک لند داشت. او تمام روشنایی جهان را در کیفی نگه می‌داشت. ترجیح می‌داد تا دنیا را سرد و تاریک نگه دارد.

می‌خواست پیشرفت شهر را متوقف کند. حیوانات نمی‌توانستند در تاریکی کار کنند. هیچ احترامی برای آنها قائل نبود. گفت "نور و روشنایی از سرشون زیاده. فقط من باید نور داشته باشم" اما حیوانات به نور نیاز داشتند. پس تصمیم گرفتند رقابتی برگزار کنند.

آن‌ها می‌خواستند باهوش‌ترین حیوان دارک لند را پیدا کنند. آن حیوان باید نور را از رئیس می‌دزدید. مسابقه را همه جا تبلیغ کردند. همه‌ی حیوانات آمدند. همگی مهارت‌های خود را نشان دادند.

بینندگان تماشا کردند و سپس به حیوانی که بیشترین دانش و مهارت را داشت رأی دادند. برنده یک پرنده قه‌لند به نام ریون بود. وظیفه‌ی گرفتن نور را بر عهده‌ی او گذاشتند. صبح روز بعد، ریون صبحانه خورد و خانه‌اش را ترک کرد.

ریون فکر کرد: "چطور نور را از رئیس بگیرم؟" باید رئیس را یک جوری گول می‌زد. سپس ایده‌ای به ذهنش رسید. ریون می‌توانست صدای هر چیزی را دریاورد. به طرف در خانه رئیس رفت. صدای کودکی گریان را درآورد. خیلی بلند گریه می‌کرد. خیلی زود، رئیس در را باز کرد و داد زد: "ساکت باش"

در همین لحظه، ریون سریع دست به کار شد. او از طرف خوک پرواز کرد و کیف نرم را پیدا کرد. آن را بیرون برد. خورشید در کیف بود! ریون به طرف بالا پرواز کرد و خورشید را در آسمان قرار داد. رئیس خیلی عصبانی بود. ریون او را فریب داد! اما سایر حیوانات خیلی خوشحال بودند. بالاخره، آنها نور داشتند. همه آن به خاطر فکر هوشمندانه ریون بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

- 1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a big, tall bird gave light to the world
 - b. A rich president who helped the world stay cool
 - c. How a competition helped animals gain skills
 - d. The importance of gaining the president's respect

- 2. Why did the pig hide the sun?
 - a. To let the people assign a job to Raven
 - b. To bring an audience to see his big house
 - c. To prevent the animals from voting
 - d. To stop progress

- 3. What is NOT true of the president?
 - a. He kept the sun in a soft bag.
 - b. He did not like the animals of Darkland.
 - c. He found a baby outside his house.
 - d. He became very angry at Raven.

- 4. How did Raven steal the sun?
 - a. He used his strength to fight the president for it.
 - b. He used his knowledge of the area to find it.
 - c. He made a sound like a baby to make the pig open the door.
 - d. He advertised a major competition and won it.

5. What was inside the soft bag?



prep.

above

[ə'baʊ]

بالا، در بالا، بالاتر از چیزی

❖ If something is above, it is at a higher level than something else.

➤ He straightened the sign that was above the crowd.

➤ او تابلویی را که بالای جمعیت بود، صاف کرد.



adv.

ahead

[ə'hed]

جلوتر، در جلوی

❖ If something is ahead of something else, it is in front of it.

➤ The blue car drove an ahead of us.

➤ ماشین آبی جلوتر از ما حرکت می کرد.



n.

amount

[ə'maʊnt]

مبلغ

❖ An amount is how much there is of something.

➤ Can I use my card to pay for the entire amount?

➤ آیا می توانم از کارت خود برای پرداخت کل مبلغ استفاده کنم؟



n.

belief

[bi'li:f]

باور، اعتقاد، عقیده

❖ A belief is a strong feeling that something is correct or true.

➤ A preacher or priest should have a strong belief in God.

➤ واعظ یا کشیش، باید اعتقاد راسخی به خدا داشته باشد.



n.

center

['sentər]

مرکز

- ❖ The center of something is the middle of it.
- The center of a dart board is the most important spot.
- مرکز تخته دارت، مهمترین نقطه است.



adj.

common

['kɑ:mən]

مشترک، متداول، معمولی

- ❖ If something is common, it happens often or there is much of it.
- It is common for snow to fall in the winter.
- برف باریدن در زمستان عادی است.



v.

cost

[kɔ:st]

هزینه کردن

- ❖ To cost is to require expenditure or payment.
- These designer shoes cost more than the regular ones.
- این کفش‌ها هزینه بیشتری نسبت به کفش‌های معمولی دارند.



v.

demonstrate

['demənstre

نشان دادن

it]

- ❖ To demonstrate something is to show how it is done.
- She demonstrated her plan to her co-workers.
- او برنامه خود را به همکارانش نشان داد.



adj.

different

[ˈdɪfrənt]

متفاوت

- ❖ different describes someone or something that is not the same as others.
- Each of my sisters has a different hair style from one another.
- هر کدام از خواهرهای من، یک مدل موی متفاوت از هم دارند.



n.

evidence

[ˈeɪdəns]

مدرک

- ❖ evidence is a fact or thing that you use to prove something.
- He used the pictures as evidence that UFOs are real.
- او از عکس‌ها به عنوان مدرکی استفاده کرد که بشقاب پرنده‌ها واقعی هستند.



n.

honesty

[ˈɒn]

درستکاری، صداقت

- ❖ honesty means the quality of being truthful or honest.
- A courtroom should be a place of honesty.
- دادگاه باید مکان صداقت باشد.



n.

idiom

[ˈɪdiəm]

اصطلاح

- ❖ An idiom is a phrase with a meaning different from its words.
- The idiom ""when pigs fly"" means that something will never happen.
- اصطلاح "وقت گل نی" به این معنی است که چیزی هرگز اتفاق نخواهد افتاد.



adj.

independent

[,ɪndɪ'pendənt]

مستقل

❖ If something is independent, it is not controlled by something else.

➤ She chose to live an independent life in the country.

➤ او تصمیم گرفت زندگی مستقلی در حومه شهر داشته باشد.



n.

inside

[,ɪn'saɪd]

داخل

❖ inside means the inner part, space or side of something.

➤ The inside of the box was empty.

➤ داخل جعبه خالی بود.



n.

master

['mæstə]

استاد

❖ A master is a person who is very good at something.

➤ My brother is a master of taekwondo.

➤ برادر من استاد تکواندو است.



n.

memory

['meməri]

حافظه، خاطره

❖ A memory is something you remember.

➤ The memory of my first time in the city will always be the best.

➤ خاطره اولین حضور من در شهر، همیشه بهترین خواهد بود.



adj.

proper

['prɑ:p]

درست، شایسته، مناسب

- ❖ If something is proper, it is right.
- It is not proper to throw your garbage on the road.
- انداختن زباله‌هایتان در جاده، کار درستی نیست.



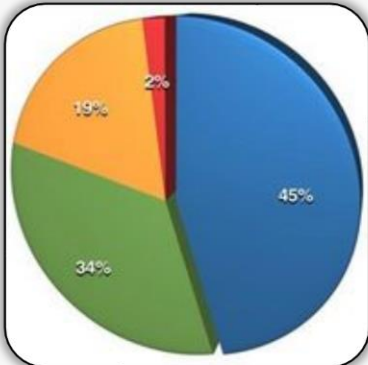
v.

scan

[skæn]

بررسی کردن، با دقت نگاه کردن، بررسی کردن

- ❖ To scan something is to look at it very carefully.
- You must scan each person closely.
- شما باید هر یک از افراد را (تک تک) از نزدیک بررسی کنید.



n.

section

['sekʃn]

بخش، قسمت

- ❖ A section is a part of something larger.
- The green section of the graph is the most important part.
- بخش سبز نمودار، مهم‌ترین قسمت آن است.



n.

surface

['sɜ:rfɪs]

سطح

- ❖ The surface of something is the top part or outside of it.
- The surface of the moon is very rough.
- سطح ماه خیلی ناهموار است.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. section
 - a. higher
 - b. the top layer
 - c. a part
 - d. to look at
2. inside
 - a. in front
 - b. the inner part
 - c. proof
 - d. someone very good at something
3. proper
 - a. a strong feeling
 - b. to treat the same
 - c. correct
 - d. in the middle
4. different
 - a. not influenced
 - b. not the same
 - c. to show how to do
 - d. a phrase with a different meaning
5. memory
 - a. a bag in clothes
 - b. a normal thing
 - c. how much money
 - d. something you remember
6. idiom
 - a. higher
 - b. a meaning different from its words
 - c. facts that prove something
 - d. to look carefully
7. amount
 - a. how much there is
 - b. a part of something larger
 - c. to treat the same
 - d. the right thing to do
8. honesty
 - a. the top of something
 - b. to learn about something
 - c. in front of something
 - d. the quality of being truthful
9. master
 - a. a way of acting
 - b. someone who is very good at something
 - c. to show how to do something
 - d. a feeling that something is correct or true
10. scan
 - a. to give something to someone
 - b. to look carefully at something
 - c. something that happens a lot
 - d. something you remember

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the better response to each question.

1. Is his picture above mine?
 a. Yes, it is much lower than yours.
 b. Yes, it is much higher than yours.
2. Should we go straight ahead to get to your house?
 a. No, we must turn left.
 b. No, it is in front of us.
3. Is this the correct amount?
 a. No, you must pay more money.
 b. No, that is the wrong answer.
4. What is your belief about ghosts?
 a. I think they are real.
 b. There are many movies about ghosts.
5. Did he put the table in the center of the room?
 a. Yes, it is against the wall.
 b. Yes, it is right in the middle.
6. Is lightning common here?
 a. No, it happens all the time.
 b. No, it never happens here.
7. Can you demonstrate how to solve the problem?
 a. Yes, I can show you.
 b. No, I know how to do it.
8. Do you have evidence to prove it?
 a. Yes, I have a news article.
 b. Yes, I think that I'm a nice person.
9. How much did your shirt cost?
 a. It was on sale for \$15.
 b. I bought it at the mall last week.
10. Will he be an independent leader?
 a. Yes, he always does what other people do.
 b. Yes, he makes his own decisions.

Cats and Secrets

In English, there is a **common idiom** “let the cat out of the bag.” It means to tell a secret. But where did this idiom start?

It came from a **section** of England. Long ago, people there went from town to town to sell things like vegetables, clothes, and pigs. They had strong **beliefs** about **honesty**. They didn't like lying. One day, a man went to the section's **center** to sell things.

“I have a baby pig for sale! It won't **cost** much,” he said. He held the animal **above** his head. His style was **different** from honest people's style. He was a **master** of tricking people and lying.

A woman named Beth **scanned** his pig. He offered her the pig for one gold coin. That was a very small **amount**. Beth gave him the coin. He put it in his pocket. He walked **ahead** of Beth to get the pig.

He gave her a closed bag and said, “Here's your pig.” He then left very quickly.

Beth looked at the bag's **surface**. It was moving. She opened it to let the pig out. A cat was **inside**! “He tricked me! That isn't **proper**,” she said.

Later, the man returned to trick more people. Beth saw him and the **memory** of the cat came back. She told her friends. They stopped him. But no one knew what to do next.

Someone said, “We need an **independent** and fair person to decide that.” They went to the judge. Beth told him about the cat in the bag.

The judge asked, “Is there **evidence**? Can you **demonstrate** how he did it?”

“Look in his bag,” said Beth. She opened it and let a cat out of the bag. They learned the man's secret, and he went to jail.

That's how the idiom “let the cat out of the bag” came to mean to tell a secret.





گره‌ها و رازها

در زبان انگلیسی، ضرب‌المثل مرسومی وجود دارد "اجازه بده گربه از کیسه بیرون بیاد" که به معنای برملا کردن یک راز است. اما این ضرب‌المثل از کجا شروع شد؟ از قسمتی از انگلیس آمده است.

مدتها پیش، مردم آنجا شهر به شهر می‌رفتند تا چیزهایی مثل سبزیجات، لباس و خوک بفروشند. آنها اعتقاد محکمی به صداقت داشتند. دروغ گفتن را دوست نداشتند. روزی، مردی به مرکز آن بخش رفت تا چیزهایی بفروشد.

گفت: "یک بچه خوک برای فروش دارم" "زیاد گرون نیست" حیوان را بالای سر خود نگه داشت. روش او با روش افراد راستگو فرق داشت. او استاد حقه زدن به مردم و دروغ‌گویی بود. زنی به نام بث خوک او را بررسی کرد. یک سکه طلا پیشنهاد داد. مقدار خیلی کمی بود. بث سکه را به او داد. آن را در جیب خود گذاشت. او جلوی بث راه می‌رفت تا خوک را بگیرد.

به او یک کیسه بسته داد و گفت "این خوک شماست" و سریعاً رفت. بث به سطح کیسه نگاه کرد. در حال حرکت کردن بود. آن را باز کرد تا خوک بیرون بیاید. یک گربه داخل آن بود! او گفتک "من را فریب داد! این درست نیست." بعداً، همان مرد بازگشت تا مردم بیشتری را گول بزند.

بث او را دید و یاد گربه افتاد. او به دوستان خود گفت. آنها او را متوقف کردند. اما کسی نمی‌دانست بعد از این باید چه کنند. یکی گفت: "باید یک فرد مستقل و عادل پیدا کنیم و او در مورد آن تصمیم بگیرد" آنها سراغ قاضی رفتند. بث در مورد گربه در کیف به او گفت.

قاضی پرسید: "آیا مدرکی وجود دارد؟ می‌توانی نشان دهی چطور این کار را انجام داد؟" بث گفت به کیسه او نگاه کنید. آن را باز کرد و اجازه داد گربه‌ای از کیف بیرون بیاید. آنها راز مرد را فهمیدند و او به زندان رفت. اینطور بود که اصطلاح "اجازه بده گربه از کیسه بیرون بیاد" به معنای گفتن راز معروف شد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of this story?
 - a. It is about a common belief about cats.
 - b. People should scan evidence carefully.
 - c. Masters of lying will go to jail.
 - d. It is about the origin of an idiom.

2. What did Beth say after she was tricked?
 - a. That's not proper.
 - b. That's a very small amount.
 - c. Can you demonstrate how he did it?
 - d. We need an independent and fair person to help.

3. Where did the man hold the pig?
 - a. In a pocket
 - b. On the surface of the bag
 - c. Above his head
 - d. In the section's center

4. Why did Beth look at the bag?
 - a. The surface was moving.
 - b. The man had a different style.
 - c. The man was ahead of her.
 - d. He offered the pig for so little money.

5. When did the memory of the cat come back to Beth?

Appendix

NUMBERS

Number	Cardinal	Ordinal
0	zero	
1	one	first [1 st]
2	two	second [2 nd]
3	three	third [3 rd]
4	four	fourth [4 th]
5	five	fifth [5 th]
6	six	sixth [6 th]
7	seven	seventh [7 th]
8	eight	eighth [8 th]
9	nine	ninth [9 th]
10	ten	tenth [10 th]
11	eleven	eleventh
12	twelve	twelfth
13	thirteen	thirteenth
14	fourteen	fourteenth
15	fifteen	fifteenth
16	sixteen	sixteenth
17	seventeen	seventeenth
18	eighteen	eighteenth
19	nineteen	nineteenth
20	twenty	twentieth
30	thirty	thirtieth
40	forty	fortieth
50	fifty	fiftieth
60	sixty	sixtieth
70	seventy	seventieth
80	eighty	eightieth
90	ninety	ninetieth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth
1,000,000	one million	one millionth
1,000,000,000	one billion	one billionth

TIME & DATE

Days of the week
Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
Sunday

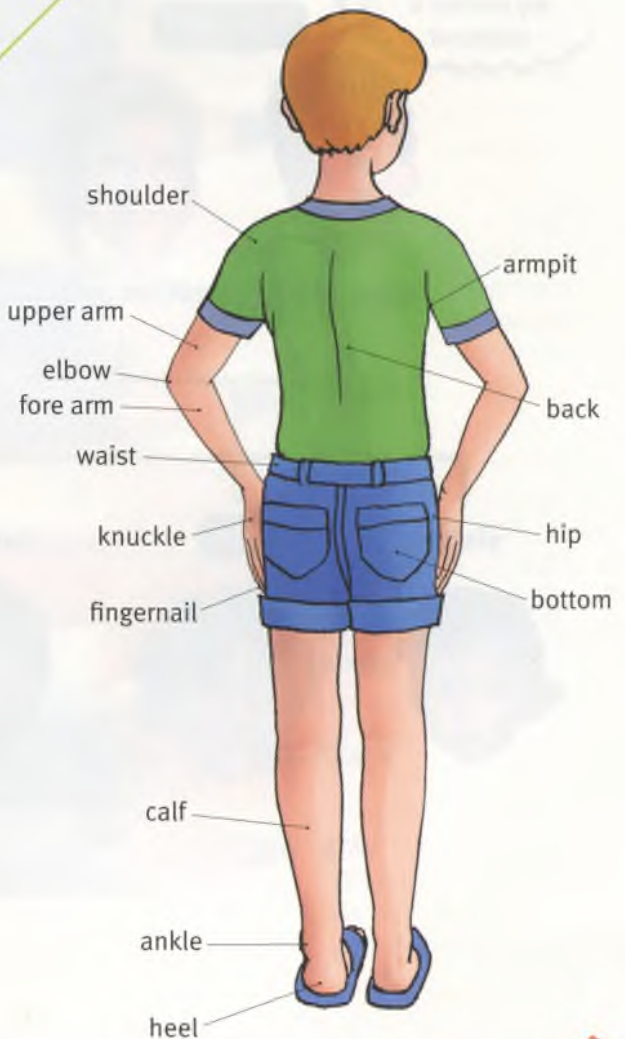
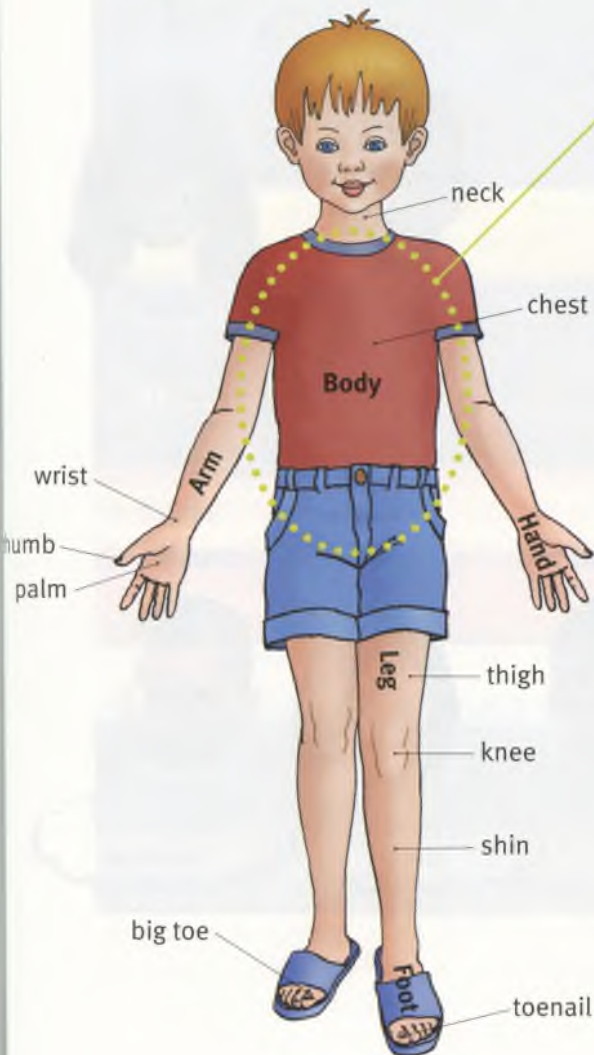
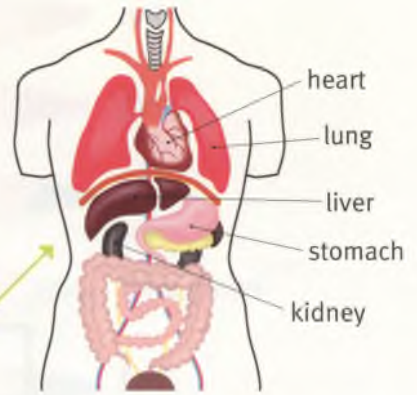
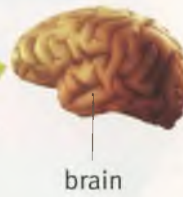
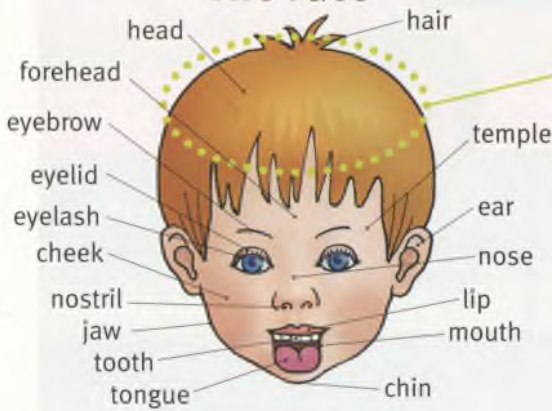
Months of the year
January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

Seasons
Spring
Summer
Autumn
Winter

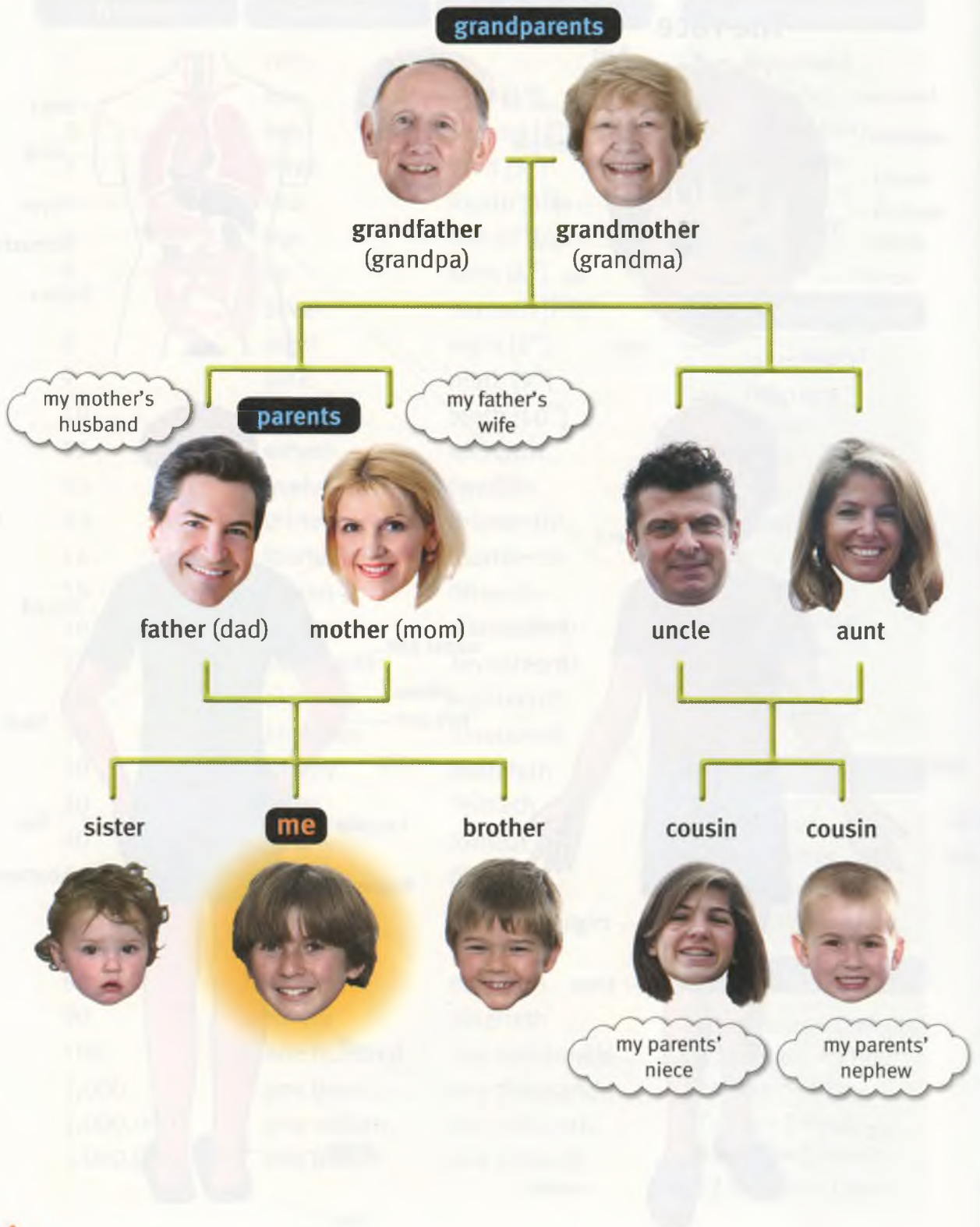
Time
60 seconds = 1 minute
60 minutes = 1 hour
24 hours = 1 day
7 days = 1 week
4 weeks = 1 month
12 months = 1 year

THE HUMAN BODY

The Face



THE FAMILY



COLORS



RED	red
PINK	pink
GREEN	green
LIME GREEN	lime green
TEAL	teal
BLUE	blue
NAVY	navy
YELLOW	yellow
PURPLE	purple
BROWN	brown
BEIGE	beige
ORANGE	orange
WHITE	white
BLACK	black
GRAY	gray

Index

A

above 182
academy 98
accept 50
achieve 122
across 92
actual 134
actually 164
advance 140
advantage 38
adventure 14
advertise 176
advice 158
advise 122
afraid 8
against 56
agree 8
ahead 182
alien 20
alive 116
allow 44
alone 74
along 158
already 122
amaze 134
among 20
amount 182
ancient 98
angry 8
announce 44
anymore 68
apartment 74
appear 128
appreciate 104
approach 14
appropriate 26
argue 110
arrange 50
arrive 8
article 74
artist 74
asleep 68
assign 176
associate 152

athlete 140
attack 8
attend 50
attention 158
attitude 74
attract 158
audience 176
available 104
average 140
avoid 26
aware 32

B

badly 32
balance 50
band 170
barely 170
base 128
basic 122
beach 56
beat 104
behave 26
behavior 140
behind 140
belief 182
belong 32
benefit 62
berry 68
beside 44
bit 122
bite 164
block 146
blood 80
board 98
bone 116
boring 170
bother 116
bottom 8
brain 128
breakfast 176
breathe 92
bright 104
burn 80

C

calm 26
cancel 170
captain 116
career 128
carefully 14
cause 38
celebrate 104
cell 80
center 182
century 98
certain 62
challenge 44
chance 62
characteristic 92
charge 134
chart 20
cheer 146
chemical 14
choice 38
claim 44
clerk 128
clever 8
climb 158
cloud 20
clue 98
coach 86
coast 164
collect 68
comfort 134
common 182
communicate 110
community 38
compare 74
compete 68
competition 176
complex 146
comprehend 20
concern 26
concert 98
conclusion 116
condition 44
consider 122
consume 92

contact 134
contain 80
content 26
continue 32
contrast 50
contribute 44
control 86
conversation 68
cool 176
correct 80
cost 182
county 98
course 140
create 14
creature 68
critic 146
crop 80
crowd 110
cruel 8
customer 134

D

damage 56
dead 38
deal 164
decision 68
deliver 134
demand 80
demonstrate 182
depend 110
describe 20
description 86
desert 164
destroy 122
determine 104
dictionary 98
difference 44
different 182
direct 86
disappear 104
discover 56
dish 110
distance 38

divide 44
 doubt 116
 driveway 170
 drop 158

E

earn 134
 earthquake 164
 effect 62
 effective 164
 effort 128
 either 68
 else 104
 emotion 56
 empty 110
 encourage 50
 enter 128
 entertain 122
 environment 152
 equal 80
 error 32
 escape 38
 essential 62
 event 146
 ever 20
 evidence 182
 evil 14
 exact 110
 exam 86
 examine 164
 example 86
 excellent 128
 excite 92
 exercise 146
 exist 98
 expect 26
 experience 32
 experiment 14
 expert 44
 explore 116
 extra 122
 extreme 92

F

face 38
 factory 152
 fail 20
 fair 104
 false 164
 familiar 50
 famous 45
 far 62
 fear 92
 feature 152
 feed 80
 field 32
 final 158
 finally 8
 fit 146
 fix 56
 flat 98
 flow 104
 focus 62
 follow 38
 force 45
 foreign 116
 forest 68
 fortunate 92
 forward 105
 frank 56
 frequently 26
 fresh 110
 friendly 20
 friendship 146
 fright 38
 function 62
 further 158

G

gain 176
 garbage 170
 gate 134
 gather 110
 gentleman 99
 ghost 39

gift 164
 glad 116
 goal 122
 grab 50
 grade 20
 grass 62
 ground 69
 guard 62
 guide 146

H

habit 26
 hang 50
 happen 92
 harm 45
 hero 128
 hidden 99
 hide 8
 hill 105
 hole 80
 honesty 183
 however 116
 huge 50
 hunger 165
 hunt 9
 hurry 128
 hurt 32

I

identify 56
 idiom 183
 image 63
 imagine 165
 immediate 63
 imply 158
 importance 176
 include 134
 increase 81
 independent 183
 indicate 110
 individual 39

inform 129
 injustice 117
 inside 183
 instance 152
 instead 20
 instruct 26
 instrument 170
 international 117
 introduce 69
 involve 152
 island 56
 issue 27
 item 111

J

journey 165
 judge 74
 judgment 32

K

kill 14
 knowledge 176

L

laboratory 14
 lack 146
 later 129
 laugh 14
 lawyer 117
 lay 45
 leave 129
 length 92
 level 105
 library 21
 lie 123
 likely 32
 limit 86
 list 170
 local 86
 locate 129

Index

lone 105
lord 81
lot 9
loud 15
lower 140

M

magazine 74
magic 170
magical 86
mail 86
maintain 158
major 176
manage 135
marry 69
master 183
match 140
material 74
maybe 99
meal 74
mean 177
meat 123
medicine 152
member 140
memory 183
mental 140
mention 117
message 170
method 75
middle 9
mistake 93
mix 152
moment 9
mystery 135

N

necessary 51
neighbor 75
neither 159
nervous 15
noise 15
none 27

normal 33
notice 171
novel 87
nurse 129

O

observe 93
occur 135
ocean 56
offer 111
officer 99
operation 129
opinion 123
opportunity 93
opposite 135
organize 152
original 99
otherwise 159
outline 87
owe 81
own 171

P

pain 129
passage 147
passenger 141
patient 27
pattern 51
peace 45
perform 147
perhaps 57
period 152
personality 141
pet 39
physical 159
planet 21
plate 135
pleasant 57
pleased 9
poem 141
poet 87
pole 141

policy 117
populate 153
position 81
positive 27
pound 99
predict 171
prefer 177
prepare 69
president 177
pressure 147
prevent 57
price 111
primary 63
prince 45
print 87
prize 93
probable 147
process 99
produce 153
product 111
professional 75
professor 171
profit 75
progress 177
project 15
promise 9
proper 183
property 111
propose 51
protect 45
proud 63
prove 159
public 147
publish 99
puddle 105
punish 27
purchase 111
purpose 51
puzzle 165

Q

quality 75
quite 165

R

race 93
raise 81
range 153
rare 33
rather 165
reach 39
react 159
real 123
realize 93
receive 135
recognize 153
recommend 111
reflect 123
refuse 129
regard 123
regular 153
relax 33
release 51
remain 63
remove 141
reply 9
report 21
represent 27
request 33
require 51
reside 33
respect 177
respond 93
response 105
responsible 81
rest 63
result 33
return 39
reward 135
rich 177
ride 159
risk 93
rock 57
roll 33
rush 171



safe 9
 safety 141
 sail 69
 save 57
 scan 183
 scare 15
 scene 87
 schedule 171
 season 105
 secret 15
 section 183
 select 111
 sense 45
 separate 63
 serious 69
 serve 123
 set 135
 several 21
 shake 27
 shape 75
 share 171
 sheet 87
 shoot 141
 shout 15
 sight 81
 sign 153
 silly 87
 since 33
 single 51
 site 63
 situated 159
 skill 177
 smell 15
 social 117
 society 159
 solution 105
 solve 21
 somehow 177
 sound 141
 space 75
 specific 165
 speech 117
 spend 69

spot 81
 spread 27
 staff 117
 stage 171
 stair 75
 standard 159
 steal 135
 step 57
 still 57
 store 87
 storm 171
 strange 69
 strength 177
 strike 147
 stroll 27
 structure 81
 success 51
 sudden 45
 suddenly 21
 suffer 87
 suggest 159
 support 147
 suppose 21
 surface 183
 survive 39
 swim 141
 symbol 75



tail 63
 task 147
 taste 57
 tear 51
 technology 87
 term 147
 terrible 15
 theater 99
 theory 51
 therefore 45
 thief 135
 thin 75
 though 129
 throw 57

tip 153
 tool 111
 tour 165
 toward 117
 tradition 153
 trash 153
 treat 111
 trick 9
 trip 165
 trouble 63
 truth 69



unite 147
 universe 22
 upset 39



value 165
 various 129
 vegetable 123
 view 21
 village 27
 visible 33
 voice 39
 vote 177



wake 69
 war 123
 waste 105
 wave 57
 wealth 99
 weather 39
 web 141
 well 9
 whether 105
 whole 81
 wide 153
 wild 33

wise 39
 within 171
 wonder 93
 wood 117
 worse 15
 worth 23



yet 93

Answer Key

Unit 1

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. a

Part B

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. d

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. a
6. b 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. c
5. The lion saw his own face in the water.

Unit 2

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a, b 2. a, d 3. b, d 4. c, d 5. a, d

Part B

1. create 2. adventure
3. approach 4. secret
5. project

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a
6. a 7. b 8. a 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. d 3. d 4. a
5. Mia and Liz went into the laboratory when Mia's father left the laboratory to eat dinner.

Unit 3

Exercise 1

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c
6. d 7. b 8. d 9. a 10. c

Exercise 2

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. b

Exercise 3

1. ever / Describe 2. chart / aliens
3. planet / universe 4. solve / fail
5. Several / view

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. d 3. d 4. c
5. He viewed Mars on the trip.

Unit 4

Exercise 1

Part A

1. spread 2. content 3. shake
4. expected 5. avoided

Part B

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. b 5. b

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. b
6. a 7. b 8. b 9. a 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d
5. They said the bell made people avoid him.

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1. d 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. c
6. d 7. c 8. d 9. b 10. a

Exercise 2

Part A

1. d 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b

Part B

1. normal 2. wild 3. hurt
4. relax 5. field

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. d 4. c
5. She requested, "Will you carry me home?"

Unit 6

Exercise 1

Part A

1. return 2. wise 3. pet
4. weather 5. face

Part B

1. ghost / fright 2. dead / upset
3. reached / advantage 4. escape / distance
5. individual / community

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. a
6. a 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. c 3. d 4. a
5. She lived by a large river.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b

Part B

1. allowed 2. harm
3. famous 4. claim
5. divided

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a
6. a 7. a 8. b 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. d
5. He would have to announce who would become king.

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1. familiar 2. necessary 3. theory
4. purpose 5. encourage me 6. accept
7. balance 8. pattern
9. contrast 10. single

Exercise 2

Part A

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. a 5. b

Part B

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. a

Answer Key

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. d
5. She arranged her hair and wore nice clothes.

Unit 9

Exercise 1

1. c 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b
6. a 7. b 8. c 9. b 10. a

Exercise 2

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c

Exercise 3

1. beach / wave 2. island / ocean
3. fix / damage 4. rock / still
5. throw / step

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d
5. Some starfish went back into the water, and they were safe.

Unit 10

Exercise 1

1. essential 2. benefit 3. trouble
4. certain 5. function 6. site
7. image 8. separate
9. remain 10. tail

Exercise 2

Part A

1. effect / benefit 2. immediate / primary
3. proud / rested 4. far / separate
5. guard / remain

Part B

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b
5. He only rested a few eyes at a time.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. d

Exercise 2

1. ground 2. spend time 3. sail
4. wake 5. forest

Exercise 3

1. prepare 2. serious 3. strange
4. conversation 5. collect 6. introduce
7. decision 8. truth
9. compete 10. asleep

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b
5. She dreamed about a man with brown hair and brown eyes. It was the man she would wed.

Unit 12

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. c

Part B

1. neighbor 2. magazine
3. professional 4. compared 5. attitude

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. a 8. a 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. b
5. Everyone was very excited as they went up the stairs to his apartment.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. a

Exercise 2

1. spot 2. feed 3. cell 4. whole 5. correct

Exercise 3

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. a

Exercise 4

1. cell / structure 2. lord / owe
3. position / spot 4. whole / hole
5. feed / crop

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. d
5. At the end of the week the lord will increase how much money he has to pay.

Unit 14

Exercise 1

Part A

1. exam 2. magical
3. technology 4. outline
5. descriptions

Part B

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. a 8. a 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a
5. Her parents made her join the basketball team.

Unit 15

Exercise 1

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d
6. a 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. a

Exercise 2

Part A

1. across 2. respond 3. race
4. observed 5. risk

Part B

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. d 3. c 4. b
5. The rabbit saw the turtle almost at the finish line.

Answer Key

Unit 16

Exercise 1

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. c
6. a 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. c

Exercise 2

1. a, d 2. b, d 3. b, c
4. a, b 5. a, b

Exercise 3

1. academy 2. process 3. maybe
4. theater 5. flat

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b
5. Jeff was going to a concert.

Unit 17

Exercise 1

Part A

1. d 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. d

Part B

1. fair 2. waste
3. disappear 4. whether
5. determine

Exercise 2

Part A

1. hill 2. solution 3. response
4. puddles 5. appreciate

Part B

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. c
5. He said, "It doesn't matter whether you *want* to fill it or not. You already did."

Unit 18

Exercise 1

1. b 2. c 3. b 4. c 5. c
6. d 7. a 8. d 9. c 10. d

Exercise 2

Part A

1. recommend 2. argue 3. products
4. communicate 5. offer

Part B

1. treated 2. fresh 3. select
4. dish 5. gathered

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. b
5. The chicken recommended doing some work.

Unit 19

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. b

Part B

1. wood 2. policy 3. staff
4. toward 5. speech

Exercise 2

Part A

1. speech 2. bother 3. wood
4. staff 5. alive

Part B

1. speech 2. policy 3. staff
4. bones 5. mentioned 6. doubt
7. injustice 8. conclusion
9. However 10. bothered

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c
5. The weather became very bad.

Unit 20

Exercise 1

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c

Exercise 2

1. meat 2. destroy 3. serve
4. regard 5. war

Exercise 3

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b
6. a 7. a 8. a 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b
5. He turned away and went home.

Unit 21

Exercise 1

1. locate 2. clerk 3. hero 4. pain 5. hurried

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b

Exercise 3

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. b
6. a 7. a 8. a 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. c
5. Katy played games, read books, and got flowers for patients.

Unit 22

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. c

Part B

1. b 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. a
6. a 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. b
5. The police said, "If anything strange occurs, call us. If you help us catch the thief, you'll earn a reward."

Unit 23

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. matches | 2. remove | 3. average |
| 4. sounded | 5. advance | 6. member |
| 7. athlete | 8. course | |
| 9. passenger | 10. personality | |

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b

Exercise 3

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. d

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d
 5. It was a course on water safety. They learned how to be safe passengers on a boat.

Unit 24

Exercise 1

- Part A
 1. d 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. c

Part B

1. strike 2. exercise 3. perform
 4. passage 5. pressure

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a
 6. b 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. a
 5. He looked at Tim and said, "I thought I was smart, but I learned a new term today: friendship."

Unit 25

Exercise 1

- Part A
 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. b

Part B

1. produce 2. range 3. populate
 4. sign 5. period

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b
 6. a 7. b 8. b 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. a 4. c
 5. The video's features made Joe associate trash with hurting people and their environment.

Unit 26

Exercise 1

- Part A
 1. a 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. c

Part B

1. react 2. society 3. neither
 4. final 5. prove

Exercise 2

- Part A
 1. advice / suggest 2. attention / situated
 3. standard / dropped 4. attracted / reacted
 5. further / along
 Part B
 1. a 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. b

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c
 5. They laughed at Tom and Archie. They started to throw stones at them.

Unit 27

Exercise 1

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. d
 6. b 7. a 8. a 9. d 10. d

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a

Exercise 3

1. gift / value 2. coast / desert
 3. hunger / bite 4. tour / journey
 5. quite / Examine

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. c 4. a
 5. He asks the bug a question first.

Unit 28

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. professor | 2. barely | 3. predict |
| 4. garbage | 5. list | 6. boring |
| 7. band | 8. schedule | |
| 9. message | 10. rush | |

Exercise 2

1. b, c 2. a, c 3. c, d 4. a, c 5. a, d

Exercise 3

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. c 3. a 4. b
 5. To tell him that they would be late.

Unit 29

Exercise 1

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. a 5. d
 6. c 7. b 8. c 9. d 10. c

Exercise 2

- Part A
 1. advertise 2. major 5. vote
 3. competition 4. skills
 Part B
 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. d 3. c 4. c
 5. The sun was inside the bag!

Unit 30

Exercise 1

1. c 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. d
 6. b 7. a 8. d 9. b 10. b

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. b
 6. b 7. a 8. a 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. a
 5. When she saw the man, the memory of the cat came back.